

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549**

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022

Or

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from _____ to _____

Commission file number: 001-37524

vTv Therapeutics Inc.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)
3980 Premier Dr, Suite 310, High Point, NC
(Address of principal executive offices)

47-3916571
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification No.)
27265
(Zip Code)

(336) 841-0300

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each Class	Trading Symbol	Name of each exchange on which registered
Class A Common Stock (Par Value \$0.01)	VTVT	NASDAQ Capital Market

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§ 232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit such files). Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Smaller reporting company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Emerging growth company	<input type="checkbox"/>		

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed a report on and attestation to its management's assessment of the effectiveness of its internal control over financial reporting under Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (15 U.S.C. 7262(b)) by the registered public accounting firm that prepared or issued its audit report.

If securities are registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act, indicate by check mark whether the financial statements of the registrant included in the filing reflect the correction of an error to previously issued financial statements.

Indicate by check mark whether any of those error corrections are restatements that required a recovery analysis of incentive-based compensation received by any of the registrant's executive officers during the relevant recovery period pursuant to §240.10D-1(b).

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes No

The aggregate market value of the registrant's Common Stock held by non-affiliates on the last business day of the Registrant's most recently completed second quarter, June 30, 2022, was \$22,745,674 (based on the closing sale price as reported on the NASDAQ).

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the Registrant's classes of common stock, as of March 6, 2023.

Class of Stock	Shares Outstanding
Class A common stock, par value \$0.01 per share	81,483,600
Class B common stock, par value \$0.01 per share	23,093,860

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Portions of the registrant's Definitive Proxy Statement relating to its 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed within 120 days after December 31, 2022, are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K where indicated.

vTv THERAPEUTICS INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES
INDEX TO FORM 10-K
FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED December 31, 2022

	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
<u>PART I</u>	
Item 1. Business	4
Item 1A. Risk Factors	17
Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments	48
Item 2. Properties	48
Item 3. Legal Proceedings	48
Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures	48
<u>PART II</u>	
Item 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities	49
Item 6. [Reserved]	49
Item 7. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	50
Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk	60
Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data	60
Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure	60
Item 9A. Controls and Procedures	60
Item 9B. Other Information	61
Item 9C. Disclosure Regarding Foreign Jurisdictions that Prevent Inspections	61
<u>PART III</u>	
Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance	62
Item 11. Executive Compensation	62
Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters	62
Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence	62
Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services	62
<u>PART IV</u>	
Item 15. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules	63
Item 16. Form 10-K Summary	65

CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

As used in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, the “Company”, the “Registrant”, “we” or “us” refer to vTv Therapeutics Inc., “vTv LLC” refers to vTv Therapeutics LLC. The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with our financial statements and related notes that appear elsewhere in this report. In addition to historical financial information, the following discussion contains forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, assumptions and beliefs. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to these differences include those discussed below and elsewhere in this report under “Part I—Item 1A, Risk Factors.” Forward-looking statements include information concerning our possible or assumed future results of operations, business strategies and operations, financing plans, potential growth opportunities, potential market opportunities, potential results of our drug development efforts or trials, and the effects of competition. Forward-looking statements include all statements that are not historical facts and can be identified by terms such as “anticipates,” “believes,” “could,” “seeks,” “estimates,” “expects,” “intends,” “may,” “plans,” “potential,” “predicts,” “projects,” “should,” “will,” “would” or similar expressions and the negatives of those terms. Given these uncertainties, you should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. Also, forward-looking statements represent our management’s plans, estimates, assumptions and beliefs only as of the date of this report. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to update these forward-looking statements publicly or to update the reasons actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements, even if new information becomes available in the future.

PART I

ITEM 1. BUSINESS

Overview

We are a clinical stage biopharmaceutical company focused on the development of orally administered treatments for diabetes. We are focused on treating metabolic and inflammatory diseases to minimize their long-term complications and improve the lives of patients. We have an innovative pipeline of first-in-class small molecule clinical and preclinical drug candidates. Our lead program is *TTP399*, an orally administered, small molecule, liver-selective glucokinase activator (“GKA”) that is a potential adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of type 1 diabetes. On April 13, 2021, we announced that the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) granted Breakthrough Therapy designation for *TTP399* as an adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of type 1 diabetes. Breakthrough Therapy designation is based on FDA’s determination that preliminary clinical evidence indicates that an investigational therapy may demonstrate substantial improvement on one or more significant endpoints relative to available therapies for a serious or life-threatening condition. Once granted, Breakthrough Therapy designation provides a sponsor with added support and the potential to expedite development and review timelines for a promising new investigational medicine. The Breakthrough Therapy designation for *TTP399* in type 1 diabetes was supported by the positive results from the Phase 2 SimpliciT-1 Study, a multi-center, randomized, double-blind, adaptive study assessing the safety and efficacy of *TTP399* as an adjunct to insulin therapy in adults with type 1 diabetes. In this trial, treatment with *TTP399* resulted in a statistically significant improvement in HbA1c relative to placebo and a clinically meaningful decrease (40%) in the frequency of severe and symptomatic hypoglycemia. *TTP399* demonstrated a favorable safety profile, in which abnormal levels of serum or urine ketones were detected less frequently in patients taking *TTP399* than those taking placebo. Moreover, a Phase 1 mechanistic study of *TTP399* in patients with type 1 diabetes to determine the impact of *TTP399* on ketone body formation showed no increased risk of ketoacidosis with *TTP399* during acute insulin withdrawal in patients with type 1 diabetes. We have completed the study conduct for An Open-Label Phase 1 Study in Healthy Male Subjects to Investigate the Absorption, Metabolism, and Excretion of [14C]-*TTP399* Following Single Dose Oral Administration. Ten participants have been dosed, and analysis is ongoing. We are working on the design for pivotal and registrational studies for *TTP399*, with input from the FDA, which we expect to launch in 2023. We are currently in active discussions with respect to financing, partnering and/or licensing transactions for the further development of *TTP399*.

We also conducted a multiple ascending dose Phase 1 study of *HPP737*, an orally administered phosphodiesterase type 4 (“PDE4”) inhibitor, to assess the pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, safety, and tolerability of *HPP737* in healthy volunteers as part of our psoriasis program. Dose escalation up to 20mg/day demonstrated approximate dose proportional increases in exposure, while maintaining a favorable safety and tolerability profile with no dose limiting safety or tolerability findings observed. Given the strategic focus of vTv announced on November 9, 2021, development activities in the United States on *HPP737* have remained paused while evaluating strategic options for this program, including potential licensing arrangements.

In addition to our internal development programs, we are continuing to further the development of five partnered programs: a small molecule GLP-1r agonist, *TTP273* (in certain Asian territories excluding Japan), the PDE4 inhibitor, *HPP737* (in certain Asian territories excluding Japan), a PPAR- δ agonist, *HPP593*, an Nrf2 activator, *HPP971* and the RAGE antagonist, *azeliagon*, through collaborations with pharmaceutical partners via licensing arrangements.

Impact of COVID-19

We have been actively monitoring the COVID-19 global health crisis and its impact on our business, employees, patients, partners, suppliers, and vendors. Our financial results for the twelve months ended December 31, 2022, were not significantly impacted by COVID-19. Though our financial results were not significantly impacted, COVID-19 precautions directly and indirectly impacted the timelines for the clinical trials conducted during 2022 and may impact the timelines of the trials currently in process with our partners and being planned.

vTv has continued to make adjustments that allow us to maintain our business operations despite current circumstances, including establishing remote working options for all employees. Given the current scope of the pandemic, we cannot predict the impact of the progression of the COVID-19 outbreak on future clinical trials and financial results due to a variety of factors, including the continued good health of our employees, the ability of our third-party suppliers, vendors, manufacturers and partners to continue to operate and provide services, the ability of our clinical trial sites to continue or resume operations, any further government and/or public actions taken in response to the pandemic and the ultimate duration of the COVID-19 pandemic.

Our Pipeline

The following table summarizes our current drug candidates and their respective stages of development:



PRODUCT	PRE-CLINICAL	PHASE I	PHASE II	PHASE III	PARTNERS + REGIONS
TTP399 GK Activator	Type 1 Diabetes				
	Type 2 Diabetes				
TTP273 Oral GLP-1R Agonist	Cystic Fibrosis-Related Diabetes				  Asia (excl. Japan)
	Type II Diabetes				
HPP737 PDE4 Inhibitor	SAD/MAD Completed				 Asia (excl. Japan)  Asia (excl. Japan)  Asia (excl. Japan)
	Psoriasis				
	COPD				
	Atopic Dermatitis				
HPP593 PPAR- δ Agonist	Primary Mitochondrial Myopathy				 Worldwide
Azeliragon RAGE Antagonist	Pancreatic Cancer				 Worldwide
HPP971 Nrf2/Bach1 Modulator	Renal Diseases				 Worldwide
HPP3033 Nrf2/Bach1 Modulator	Undisclosed				
TTP-RA RAGE Antagonist	Type 1 Diabetes Prevention				

Our Strategy

Our goal is to advance the development of our differentiated pipeline of orally administered, small molecule drug candidates to treat metabolic and inflammatory diseases to minimize their long-term complications and to improve the lives of patients. In December 2021, the Company announced a strategic decision to prioritize the development of its lead program *TTP399*, a novel, oral, liver-selective glucokinase activator. This decision included a reduction in the Company's workforce affecting approximately 65% of its employees. We are also actively seeking licensing deals for our other assets. As key components of our strategy, we are focused on:

- Continuing to advance *TTP399* as a potential treatment for type 1 diabetes.** On April 13, 2021, we announced that the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has granted Breakthrough Therapy designation for *TTP399* as an adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of type 1 diabetes. The Breakthrough Therapy designation for *TTP399* in type 1 diabetes was supported by the positive results from the phase 2 SimpliciT-1 Study, a multi-center, randomized, double-blind, adaptive study assessing the safety and efficacy of *TTP399* as an adjunct to insulin therapy in adults with type 1 diabetes. In this trial, treatment with *TTP399* resulted in a statistically significant improvement in HbA1c relative to placebo and a clinically meaningful decrease (40%) in the frequency of severe and symptomatic hypoglycemia. In addition the mechanistic study in patients with type 1 diabetes to determine the impact of *TTP399* on ketone body formation during a period of acute insulin withdrawal indicated no increased risk of ketoacidosis with *TTP399* during acute insulin withdrawal in patients with type 1 diabetes. These results are important since the FDA has declined to approve SGLT2 inhibitors as an adjunctive therapy in Type 1 Diabetes ("T1D"), with concerns over the potential increased risks of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) in focus. The Company is planning two pivotal, placebo-controlled clinical trials of *TTP399* in patients with type 1 diabetes and is engaged with the FDA on the optimal clinical trial designs for these studies. The Company expects to begin these pivotal studies in 2023.
- Seeking additional strategic collaborations and additional funding to support the continued development and commercialization of our development programs.** We will continue to seek additional funding to support the further development of our drug candidates. Such support may come from strategic collaborations with non-profit research funding organizations such as JDRF International or from collaboration agreements with other pharmaceutical companies. We are currently in active discussions with respect to financing, partnering and licensing transactions for the further development of *TTP399*.

- **Continuing to monitor and support existing partnerships for pipeline programs.** Our partners developing our GLP-1r, PPAR- δ , PDE4, and Nrf2 programs continue to advance these assets in their respective licensed territories. We continue to support and monitor these partnerships.

Our Type 1 Diabetes Program –TTP399

Diabetes Overview

Type 1 diabetes is an autoimmune disease in which a person's pancreas stops producing insulin (a hormone that enables people to get energy from food). Type 1 diabetes results when the body's immune system attacks and destroys the insulin-producing cells in the pancreas called beta cells. While the causes of type 1 diabetes are not yet entirely understood, scientists believe that both genetic factors and environmental triggers are involved. The onset of type 1 diabetes is not believed to be affected by diet or lifestyle.

Current Treatments for Type 1 Diabetes and Their Limitations

Patients with type 1 diabetes have difficulty achieving and maintaining consistent glycemic control, defined as HbA1c < 7% as recommended by the American Diabetes Association (ADA). In order to maintain appropriate glycemic control, patients with type 1 diabetes are required to constantly monitor their blood glucose levels, closely manage their diet, and administer insulin via injection in response. While technology has advanced to help people with type 1 diabetes manage the burden of this monitoring and insulin administration process, including continuous glucose monitors and insulin pumps, patient outcomes have not improved: approximately 80% of people with type 1 diabetes fail to achieve the ADA's recommended HbA1c levels. Failure to maintain glycemic control results in dangerous excursions into hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia that are potentially fatal. In addition, the accumulated impact of these glycemic excursions can raise a patient's risk of potentially serious and life-threatening long-term complications, such as cardiovascular disease, blindness, kidney failure, and nerve damage.

Several existing treatment options for type 2 diabetes have been investigated to treat type 1 diabetes, generally without success. While a pair of SGLT-1/2 and SGLT-2 inhibitors were approved in recent years in Europe and Japan with label restrictions to certain sub-groups of people with type 1 diabetes, these therapies have not been approved in the U.S. due to safety risks primarily relating to diabetic ketoacidosis ("DKA"). Alternative therapeutic modalities, including monoclonal antibodies, are under clinical investigation and have demonstrated evidence of the potential to delay the onset of type 1 diabetes. Such alternatives have not completed clinical development or received regulatory approval, nor do they address the unmet need of existing patients with type 1 diabetes or those that eventually become patients with type 1 diabetes following any therapeutic delay in disease onset.

With insulin and pramlintide injection as the only treatment options approved in the United States for type 1 diabetes, there is a serious unmet medical need to provide people with type 1 diabetes additional, especially oral, treatment options that can help them to reduce HbA1c, or the incidence of hypoglycemia (blood glucose levels below normal) or DKA.

The Role of Glucokinase Activation in Diabetes

Glucokinase ("GK") is a key regulator of glucose homeostasis and acts as the physiological glucose sensor, changing its conformation, activity, and/or intracellular location in parallel with changes in glucose concentrations. GK has two distinctive characteristics that make it a good choice for blood glucose control. First, its expression is mostly limited to tissues that require glucose-sensing (mainly liver and pancreatic β -cells). Second, GK acts as a biological sensor for changes in serum glucose levels and modulates changes in liver glucose metabolism that in turn regulates the balance between hepatic glucose production and glucose consumption and modulates changes in insulin secretion by the β -cells. GK activation is attractive as a potential therapy for the treatment of type 1 diabetes and has a mechanism of action entirely distinct from currently marketed oral anti-diabetic drugs ("OAD").

TTP399

TTP399 is an orally administered, small molecule, liver-selective glucokinase activator ("GKA") in development as an adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of type 1 diabetes. TTP399 has a novel mechanism of action: liver-selective activation of GK that seeks to provide intensive glycemic control and a reduction in the risk of hypoglycemia. Our trials for TTP399 to date suggest that our liver-selective approach to GK activation has the potential to avoid the tolerability issues associated with other GKAs, such as activation of GK in the pancreas, stimulation of insulin secretion independent of glucose, hypoglycemia, increased lipids, and liver toxicity. Based on data from Phase 1 and 2 trials to date, we believe that TTP399, if approved, has the potential to be a first-in-class OAD due to its liver-selectivity and novel mechanism of action. We have completed ten Phase 1 and three Phase 2 clinical trials of TTP399, one of which was six months in duration. In our

Phase 1 and 2 clinical trials, *TTP399* was well tolerated with negligible incidence of hypoglycemia in the type 2 diabetes studies and a significant reduction of hypoglycemia observed in the Phase 2 study in type 1 diabetes.

Positive Phase 2 Simpli-T1 Study

In February 2020, we announced positive results from the Simpli-T1 Study, an adaptive Phase 2 clinical trial of *TTP399*, assessing the pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, safety, and tolerability of *TTP399* in adult patients with T1D over a 12-week period. The Simpli-T1 Study achieved its primary objective by demonstrating statistically significant improvements in HbA1c for *TTP399* compared to placebo. Moreover, a clinically meaningful decrease (40%) in the frequency of severe and symptomatic hypoglycemia was observed in patients taking *TTP399* when compared to those taking placebo.

Mechanistic study

In October 2021, we announced positive results from the mechanistic study indicating no increased risk of ketoacidosis with *TTP399* during acute insulin withdrawal in patients with type 1 diabetes.

Consistent with previous clinical studies of *TTP399*, the drug was well tolerated with fewer subjects reporting treatment-emergent adverse events in the group taking *TTP399* than in the placebo group. Importantly, patients taking *TTP399* reported no events of hypoglycemia, while four events of hypoglycemia were reported in the placebo group.

Clinical Development Plan

Based upon the positive results of our Simpli-T1 Study, we requested breakthrough treatment designation (BTD) with the FDA which was granted in April 2021. We have completed the study conduct for An Open-Label Phase 1 Study in Healthy Male Subjects to Investigate the Absorption, Metabolism, and Excretion of [14C]-*TTP399* Following Single Dose Oral Administration. Ten participants have been dosed, and analysis is ongoing. The Company is planning two pivotal, placebo-controlled clinical trials of *TTP399* in subjects with type 1 diabetes and is engaged with the FDA on the optimal clinical trial designs for these studies. The Company expects to begin these pivotal studies in the second half of 2023. The FDA confirmed that the effect size of *TTP399* on events of hypoglycemia as demonstrated in the Phase 2 Simpli-T1 Study are clinically meaningful and that a reduction in events of hypoglycemia would be an acceptable clinical endpoint for evaluation of an adjunctive therapy for the treatment of type 1 diabetes.

Preclinical Development Plan

Long-term toxicology studies and Development and reproductive toxicology studies, have been completed. Carcinogenicity studies are ongoing and expected to be completed by the second quarter of 2024.

Collaboration Agreements

G42 Transaction

On May 31, 2022, the Company and G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd, a private limited company (“G42 Investments”), entered into a Common Stock Purchase Agreement (the “G42 Purchase Agreement”), pursuant to which the Company sold to G42 Investments 10,386,274 shares of the Company’s Class A common stock at a price per share of approximately \$2.41, for an aggregate purchase price of \$25.0 million, which was paid (i) \$12.5 million in cash at the closing and (ii) \$12.5 million in the form of a promissory note of G42 Investments to be paid on May 31, 2023 (the “G42 Promissory Note”). As part of the G42 Purchase Agreement, G42 Investments nominated a director as appointee and the Company’s board of directors approved appointing the new director to the Company’s board.

G42 Investments has agreed to certain transfer restrictions (including restrictions on short sales or similar transactions) and restrictions on further acquisitions of shares, in each case subject to specified exceptions. Following the expiration of a lock up period, from the period May 31, 2022 until December 31, 2024 (or if earlier, the date of receipt of FDA approval in the United States for *TTP399* (the “FDA Approval”) of *TTP399*), the Company has granted to G42 Investments certain shelf and piggyback registration rights with respect to those shares of Class A common stock issued to G42 Investments pursuant to the G42 Purchase Agreement, including the ability to conduct an underwritten offering to resell such shares under certain circumstances. The registration rights include customary cooperation, cut-back, expense reimbursement, and indemnification provisions.

Contemporaneously with the G42 Purchase Agreement, effective on May 31, 2022, the Company entered into a collaboration and license agreement (the “Cogna Agreement”) with Cognia Technology Solutions LLC, an affiliate of G42 Investments (“Cogna”), which requires Cognia to work with the Company in performing clinical trials for the Company’s *TTP399* compound (the “Licensed Product”) as well as jointly creating a global development plan to develop, market, and commercialize *TTP399* in certain countries in the Middle East, Africa, and Central Asia (the “Partner Territory”). Under the

terms of the Cogna Agreement, Cogna will obtain a license under certain intellectual property controlled by the Company to enable it to fulfill its obligations and exercise its rights under the Cogna Agreement, including to develop and commercialize the Licensed Product in the Partner Territory, but will not have access to the various intellectual property related to the license and *TTP399*. Specifically, the Company will share various protocols with Cogna related to conducting the clinical trials and will provide the patient dosages and placebo of *TTP399* needed to conduct the trials.

Under the Cogna Agreement, Cogna has the right to develop and commercialize the Licensed Product in the Partner Territory at its own cost once restrictions on the use of the IP have been lifted by the Company. The Cogna Agreement determined which specific countries in the Partner Territory that Cogna may pursue development and commercialization and provides the Company with the ability to determine when Cogna can benefit from this IP through the powers granted to the Company to approve the global development plan. Further, the Company may supply at cost, or Cogna may manufacture, *TTP399* for commercial sale under terms to be agreed upon by the parties at a later date.

Separately, the Company will conduct its clinical trials for *TTP399* outside of the Partner Territory, at its own cost. The results of each party's clinical trials will be combined by the Company to seek FDA approval in the United States for *TTP399*. On December 21, 2022, G42 Healthcare Technology Solutions LLC (formerly known as Cogna Technology Solutions LLC) novated its rights and obligations under the Cogna Agreement to G42 Healthcare Research Technology Projects LLC ("G42 Healthcare"), an affiliate of G42 Investments. As a result of the novation, all references to Cogna herein shall be deemed to refer to G42 Healthcare.

The G42 Purchase Agreement also provides for, following the receipt of FDA approval of the Licensed Product, at the option of G42 Investments, either (a) the issuance of the Company's Class A common stock (the "Milestone Shares") having an aggregate value equal to \$30.0 million or (b) the payment by the Company of \$30.0 million in cash (the "Milestone Cash Payment"). The issuance of the Milestone Shares or the payment of the Milestone Cash Payment, as applicable, are conditioned upon receipt of the FDA Approval and subject to certain limitations and conditions set forth in the G42 Purchase Agreement. There can be no assurance that the FDA Approval will be granted or as to the timing thereof.

Once commercialization takes place in the Partner Territory, the Company will receive royalties in the single digits from Cogna on the net sales of the Licensed Product for a period of at least ten years after the first commercial sale of the Licensed Product in the Partner Territory.

On February 28, 2023, the Company and G42 Investments amended the G42 Purchase Agreement and modified the G42 Promissory Note to accelerate the payment due under the note. Pursuant to the amendment, on February 28, 2023, the Company received \$12.0 million, which reflected the original amount due under the G42 Promissory Note less a 3.75% discount, in full satisfaction of the note.

CinPax and CinRx Transaction

On July 22, 2022, the Company entered into the CinRx Purchase Agreement with CinPax, LLC ("CinPax"), a subsidiary of CinRx Pharma, LLC ("CinRx"), pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell to CinPax 4,154,549 shares of the Company's Class A common stock at a price per share of approximately \$2.41, for an aggregate purchase price of \$10.0 million, which was paid (i) \$6.0 million in cash at the closing of the transaction and (ii) \$4.0 million in the form of a non-interest-bearing promissory note with CinPax and was paid to the Company on November 22, 2022. The CinRx Purchase Agreement provides CinPax the right to nominate a director to be approved on vTv's Board of Directors and a board observer, which was subsequently approved by the Company's board.

The CinRx Purchase Agreement also provides CinRx warrants to purchase up to 1,200,000 shares of Class A common stock at an initial exercise of price of approximately \$0.72 per share (the "CinRx Warrants"). The CinRx Warrants will become exercisable by CinRx only if (i) the Company receives FDA approval to market and distribute the pharmaceutical product containing the Company's proprietary candidate, *TTP399*, or (ii) the Company is acquired by a third party, sells all or substantially all of its assets related to *TTP399* to a third party or grants a third party an exclusive license to develop, commercialize and manufacture *TTP399* in the United States. If neither of these events happen within five years of the date of the issuance of the CinRx Warrants, the CinRx Warrants will expire and not be exercisable by CinRx. The exercise price of the CinRx Warrants and the number of shares issuable upon exercise of the CinRx Warrants are subject to adjustments in accordance with the terms of the CinRx Warrants.

Additionally, in conjunction with the CinRx Purchase Agreement the Company and CinRx entered into a Master Service Agreement whereby CinRx provides the Company with consulting, preclinical and clinical trial services, as enumerated in project proposals negotiated between the Company and CinRx from time to time.

Our Psoriasis Program – HPP737 - PDE4 Inhibitor

Psoriasis Overview

Psoriasis is a chronic autoimmune inflammatory disease in which the growth cycle of skin is accelerated due to an imbalance in pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines. This results in the proliferation of skin cells and the development of raised, red, silvery scale plaques (i.e., plaque psoriasis, psoriasis vulgaris) that has not only medical implications but an impact on a patient's quality of life. While the specific inciting events for this pro-inflammatory process are unknown psoriasis may be caused by autoimmunity and genetic predisposition. Events such as trauma to the skin, stress, illness, or infection that triggers the immune systems, obesity, and weather have been identified as triggers for flare ups.

Current Treatment for Psoriasis and Their Limitations

Topical therapies including glucocorticoids and vitamin D analogs are the mainstay of treatment for mild psoriasis. The continuous long-term use of glucocorticoids is limited by the risk of skin thinning / atrophy and the potential for systemic absorption. Vitamin D analogs are often added to glucocorticoids to improve glucocorticoid efficacy while allowing for reduction in glucocorticoid dose. Moderate to severe disease is treated with systemic therapies including oral PDE4 inhibition, immunosuppressants, retinoids, and biologics (ex: anti-TNF agents, IL-17 inhibitors, IL-23 inhibitors). Biologics, while realizing high efficacy rates in treating psoriasis, are associated with administration by injection, high cost, need for laboratory monitoring and increased risk of infection.

Inhibitors of PDE4 act by increasing intracellular concentrations of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (“cAMP”), which has a broad range of anti-inflammatory effects. PDE4 activity is increased in the skin of patients with psoriasis leading to up-regulation of immune modulatory, pro-inflammatory genes and cytokines including interleukin-17 (IL-17), interleukin-23 (IL-23), and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF- α). Treatments for psoriasis are aimed at reducing pro-inflammatory cytokine activity. The therapeutic potential of oral PDE4 inhibitors has been limited by dose limiting AEs such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and headache.

HPP737

HPP737 is an orally administered, potent and selective, non-CNS penetrant PDE4 inhibitor that addresses inflammatory diseases and offers the potential for an improved tolerability profile and efficacy over commercially available PDE4 inhibitors. *HPP737* has shown potent inhibition of IL-17a and TNF- α production in in vitro studies and activity in several animal models of inflammation. *HPP737* has completed Phase 1 single-ascending dose and initial multiple-ascending dose studies, in which it was well tolerated at all doses tested in healthy volunteers. Clinical data generated to date supports achieving target engagement (reduction in ex vivo LPS stimulated TNF- α) at *HPP737* plasma concentrations predicted to be efficacious from preclinical models.

In September 2021, we announced the results of a multiple ascending dose Phase 1 study of *HPP737*, an orally administered phosphodiesterase type 4 (“PDE4”) inhibitor, to assess the pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, safety and tolerability of *HPP737* in healthy volunteers as part of our psoriasis development program. The trial enrolled 12 subjects in each of two dose cohorts, 15mg and 20mg, randomized to receive *HPP737* or placebo (3:1) orally once daily for 14 days. Dose escalation up to 20mg once per day demonstrated dose proportional increases in exposure, while maintaining a favorable safety and tolerability profile with no dose limiting safety or tolerability findings observed. There were no serious adverse events and no discontinuations due to treatment emergent adverse events.

Business Plan

Given the new strategic focus of vTv announced on November 9, 2021, development activities in the United States on *HPP737* were paused while evaluating strategic options for this program, including potential licensing arrangements.

Our Cystic Fibrosis Related Diabetes Program – TTP273 - GLP-1r Agonist

Cystic Fibrosis Related Diabetes Overview

Cystic fibrosis related diabetes (“CFRD”) shares some features with both type 1 and type 2 diabetes but is distinct, and is likewise categorized as diabetes due to other causes, specifically a disease of the exocrine pancreas by the American Diabetes Association. In people with cystic fibrosis (“CF”), the thick, sticky mucus that is characteristic of the disease causes scarring of the pancreas. This scarring prevents the pancreas from producing normal amounts of insulin. The damaged pancreas also responds to insulin signaling in a delayed manner. The delay and blunting of the insulin response in patients with CFRD results in post-prandial hyperglycemia.

The Role of GLP-1r Activation in Cystic Fibrosis Related Diabetes

GLP-1, an incretin hormone that is released by the gut in response to nutrients, lowers postprandial glucose by promoting insulin secretion. Abnormally low postprandial stimulation of incretins has been described in CF patients and improvement in postprandial hyperglycemia has been demonstrated following prandial administration of GLP-1 agonists or DPP-4 inhibitors. Nevertheless, the use of existing GLP-1 mimetics that are available for the treatment of type 2 diabetes to treat CFRD is limited by the GI side effects and undesired weight loss associated with these agents.

TTP273

TTP273 is an orally available, small molecule GLP-1 receptor agonist which has been demonstrated to reduce postprandial glucose excursion in response to an oral glucose test or mixed meal tolerance test in both preclinical and clinical studies. We believe that *TTP273* could be used to treat postprandial hyperglycemia in CFRD patients and CF patients with abnormal post-prandial glucose excursions without inducing hypoglycemia or GI side effects. An oral therapy such as *TTP273* is needed because the current method of treatment of CFRD is injected insulin, which comes with associated risks of hypoglycemia and poses additional burdens on patients. Other available oral therapies for type 2 diabetes are not recommended for the treatment of CFRD due to side effects such as hypoglycemia, weight loss, or nausea. In particular, the GLP-1 mimetics currently in the market have been demonstrated to result in increased GI side effects and undesired weight loss, both of which are major drawbacks for patients with CFRD.

We have completed two Phase 1 clinical trials and one Phase 2 clinical trial of *TTP273*. Additionally, we have completed nine Phase 1 clinical trials and one Phase 2 clinical trial of *TTP054*, a predecessor orally administered GLP-1r agonist. In our Phase 1 and Phase 2 clinical trials, *TTP273* has been demonstrated to be well-tolerated with lower incidences of GI side effects, such as nausea and vomiting, than placebo with minimal weight loss, especially in non-obese patients.

We are currently planning an adaptive Phase 1b/2 clinical trial assessing the pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, safety, and tolerability of *TTP273*, but the final design may be adjusted based on the feedback received, if any, from the FDA and the conduct of this clinical trial is dependent upon securing a funding partner.

Our Nrf2/Bach1 Modulator Program

The Role of Nrf2/Bach1 Modulators

Chronic, unresolved inflammation, oxidative stress, and resulting fibrosis are key features of many diseases. Inflammation is an integral component of the normal immune response that occurs when cells encounter harmful stimuli, such as invading pathogens, damaged cells, or irritants. During inflammation, cells activate inflammatory processes and complexes that increase the production of cytokines, which are proteins that recruit and activate immune cells.

Inflammation and mitochondrial metabolism are closely associated. The mitochondria are often called the “powerhouses” of the cell as they produce the energy that the cell needs to function. This energy is produced by converting fatty acids and glucose into adenosine triphosphate (ATP) by a process called oxidative phosphorylation. During inflammation, mitochondrial metabolism is temporarily reprogrammed to suppress oxidative phosphorylation. Instead of primarily making ATP, the mitochondria divert fatty acids and glucose to increase the production of proinflammatory mediators. During this reprogramming, the mitochondria release chemically reactive molecules called reactive oxygen species (ROS) that can directly attack pathogens and amplify the production of cytokines.

In a normal immune response, the resolution of inflammation begins after the harmful stimuli have been eliminated. Nrf2 is a protein that plays a key role in the resolution of inflammation by regulating the expression of specific genes involved in mitochondrial metabolism, redox balance, and cytokine production. When activated, Nrf2 promotes the resolution of inflammation by normalizing mitochondrial metabolism, restoring redox balance, and suppressing cytokine production.

In many chronic and genetic diseases, Nrf2 activity is suppressed, and the resolution of inflammation fails to occur or is inadequate, leading to persistent mitochondrial dysfunction, excess production of ROS, and production of cytokines. These processes cause chronic inflammation, which can ultimately lead to tissue damage and loss of organ function.

To date, therapeutic agents seeking to activate Nrf2, such as Bardoxolone or Tecfidera, have relied on reactive, electrophilic biological targets that may present safety and tolerability issues. Non-electrophilic activation of the Nrf2 pathway via targeting the Bach1 transcriptional repressor provides an alternative mechanism by which to increase the activation of Nrf2 to reduce the oxidative stress and inflammation associated with many acute and chronic diseases.

Bach1 is a transcriptional repressor that controls the expression of certain genes involved in the body’s antioxidant response processes. Genetic knock-out models of Bach1 have shown increased expression of multiple antioxidant proteins such as heme oxygenase-1 (HMOX1), leading to a significant level of cellular, tissue and organ protection in a wide variety

of mouse models. Hemin and the hemin mimetic cobalt protoporphyrin IX (“CoPP”) are Bach1 ligands that have served as useful tool compounds to investigate the role of Bach1 inhibition in a variety of disease settings. Both molecules have been shown to have beneficial effects on oxidative stress and inflammatory-mediated pathologies in several animal models. Further, the ubiquity of the response suggests that the observed tissue protective effects are not related to the underlying causes of a particular disease, but instead are an intrinsic outcome of Bach1 modulation along with Nrf2 activation.

HPP3033

Our candidate, *HPP3033*, represents a novel, non-electrophilic therapeutic approach to activating the Nrf2 pathway that has the potential to be used in the treatment of chronic diseases associated with oxidative stress. We are currently evaluating *HPP3033* and other Nrf2 activator compounds in various preclinical studies.

Partnered Development Programs

PPAR-δ and Reneo Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

On December 21, 2017, we entered into a License Agreement with Reneo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (“Reneo”) (the “Reneo License Agreement”), under which Reneo obtained an exclusive, worldwide, sublicensable license to develop and commercialize our peroxisome proliferation activated receptor delta (PPAR-δ) agonist program, including the compound *HPP593* (REN001), for therapeutic, prophylactic, or diagnostic application in humans.

Under the terms of the Reneo License Agreement, Reneo paid us an initial license fee of \$3.0 million. We are eligible to receive additional potential development, regulatory and sales-based milestone payments totaling up to \$94.5 million. In addition, Reneo is obligated to pay us royalty payments at mid-single to low-double digit rates, based on tiers of annual net sales of licensed products. Such royalties will be payable on a licensed product-by-licensed product and country-by-country basis until the latest of expiration of the licensed patents covering a licensed product in a country, expiration of data exclusivity rights for a licensed product in a country or a specified number of years after the first commercial sale of a licensed product in a country. In addition, we have received common stock and certain participation rights representing a minority interest in Reneo’s outstanding equity.

Under the terms of the Reneo License Agreement, Reneo will be responsible for the worldwide development and commercialization of the licensed products, at its cost, and is required to use commercially reasonable efforts with respect to such development and commercialization efforts.

The Reneo License Agreement, unless terminated earlier, will continue until expiration of all royalty obligations of Reneo to us. Either party may terminate the Reneo License Agreement for the other party’s uncured material breach. Reneo may terminate the Reneo License Agreement at will upon prior written notice. Upon expiration (but not earlier termination) of the Reneo License Agreement, the licenses granted to Reneo will survive on a royalty-free basis in perpetuity.

Reneo has continued to progress the development of REN001 for primary mitochondrial myopathy (PMM) and long-chain fatty acid oxidation disorders (LC-FAOD). The Phase 2 study of REN001 for glycogen storage disorder type V (McArdle Disease) showed only modest benefits, and Reneo does not plan to proceed further for this indication.

GLP-1r and Huadong

On December 21, 2017, we entered into a License Agreement with Hangzhou Zhongmei Huadong Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. (“Huadong”) (the “Huadong License Agreement”), under which Huadong obtained an exclusive and sublicensable license to develop and commercialize our glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (“GLP-1r”) program, including the compound *TTP273*, for therapeutic uses in humans or animals, in China and certain other Pacific Rim territories, including Australia and South Korea (collectively, the “Huadong License Territory”). Additionally, under the Huadong License Agreement, we obtained a non-exclusive, sublicensable, royalty-free license to develop and commercialize certain Huadong patent rights and know-how related to our GLP-1r program for therapeutic uses in humans or animals outside of the Huadong License Territory.

Under the terms of the Huadong License Agreement, Huadong has paid us an initial license fee of \$8.0 million, and we are eligible to receive potential development and regulatory milestone payments totaling up to \$22.0 million, as amended in January 2021. Additionally, we are eligible to receive additional potential regulatory milestone of \$20.0 million if Huadong receives regulatory approval for a central nervous system indication. Further, we are eligible for an additional \$50.0 million in potential sales-based milestones, as well as royalty payments ranging from low-single to low-double digit rates, based on tiered sales of licensed products.

Under the original Huadong License Agreement, we had the obligation to conduct a Phase 2 multi-region clinical trial (the “Phase 2 MRCT”), should Huadong require us to do so. We were also responsible for contributing up to \$3.0 million in

connection with the Phase 2 MRCT, if it occurs. However, the Huadong License Agreement was amended in January 2021 to remove these obligations. The Phase II study in mainland China and Taiwan has achieved Last Patient Out “LPO” on January 11, 2022. In addition, a milestone was paid in 2022.

Huadong will be responsible for the development and commercialization of the licensed products in the Huadong License Territory, at its cost, and is required to use commercially reasonable efforts with respect to its development efforts. Further, Huadong is required to use commercially reasonable efforts to develop and commercialize at least one GLP-1r compound in China.

The Huadong License Agreement, unless terminated earlier, will continue on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis until expiration of the royalty obligations Huadong owes to us on such licensed product, which extend until the later of the expiration of certain patent or data exclusivity rights covering such licensed product in such country or eight years after the first commercial sale of such product in such country. Either party may terminate the Huadong License Agreement for the other party’s uncured material breach.

PDE4 and Newsoara Biopharma

On May 31, 2018, we entered into a license agreement with Newsoara (the “Newsoara License Agreement”), under which Newsoara obtained an exclusive and sublicensable license to develop and commercialize our phosphodiesterase type 4 inhibitors (“PDE4”) program, including the compound *HPP737*, in China and other Pacific Rim territories (collectively, the “Newsoara License Territory”). Additionally, under the Newsoara License Agreement, we obtained a non-exclusive, sublicensable, royalty-free license to develop and commercialize certain Newsoara patent rights and know-how related to our PDE4 program for therapeutic uses in humans outside of the Newsoara License Territory.

Under the terms of the Newsoara License Agreement, as amended, Newsoara paid us an upfront cash payment of \$2.0 million. We are eligible to receive additional potential development, regulatory and sales-based milestone payments totaling up to \$58.5 million. In addition, Newsoara is obligated to pay us royalty payments at high-single to low-double digit rates, based on tiers of annual net sales of licensed products. Such royalties will be payable on a licensed product-by-licensed product and country-by-country basis until the latest of expiration of the licensed patents covering a licensed product in a country, expiration of data exclusivity rights for a licensed product in a country or a specified number of years after the first commercial sale of a licensed product in a country.

Under the terms of the Newsoara License Agreement, Newsoara will be responsible for the development and commercialization of the licensed products in the Newsoara License Territory, at its cost, and is required to use commercially reasonable efforts with respect to such development and commercialization efforts.

The Newsoara License Agreement, unless terminated earlier, will continue until expiration of all royalty obligations of Newsoara to us. Either party may terminate the Newsoara License Agreement for the other party’s uncured material breach. Newsoara may terminate the Newsoara License Agreement at will upon prior written notice. Upon expiration (but not earlier termination) of the Newsoara License Agreement the licenses granted to Newsoara will survive on a royalty-free basis in perpetuity.

Nrf2 and Anteris Bio

On December 11, 2020, we entered into a license agreement with Anteris Bio, Inc. (“Anteris”) (the “Anteris License Agreement”), under which Anteris obtained a worldwide, exclusive and sublicensable license to develop and commercialize vTv LLC’s Nrf2 activator, *HPP971*.

Under the terms of the Anteris License Agreement, Anteris paid vTv LLC an initial license fee of \$2.0 million. vTv LLC is eligible to receive additional potential development, regulatory, and sales-based milestone payments totaling up to \$151.0 million. Anteris is also obligated to pay vTv royalty payments at a double-digit rate based on annual net sales of licensed products. Such royalties will be payable on a licensed product-by-licensed product basis until the latest of expiration of the licensed patents covering a licensed product in a country, expiration of data exclusivity rights for a licensed product in a country, or a specified number of years after the first commercial sale of a licensed product in a country. In addition, vTv LLC received a minority ownership interest in Anteris.

Under the terms of the Anteris License Agreement, Anteris will be responsible for the development and commercialization of the licensed products, at its cost, and is required to use commercially reasonable efforts with respect to such development and commercialization efforts.

The Anteris License Agreement, unless terminated earlier, will continue until expiration of all royalty obligations of Anteris to vTv LLC. Either party may terminate the Anteris License Agreement for the other party’s uncured material breach.

Anteris may terminate the Anteris License Agreement at will upon prior written notice. Either party may terminate the Anteris License Agreement for the other party's insolvency.

Azeliragon and Cantex Pharmaceuticals

On June 22 2021, vTv Therapeutics Inc. and Cantex Pharmaceuticals, Inc. ("Cantex") entered into a licensing agreement under which Cantex obtained exclusive worldwide rights to develop and commercialize *azeliragon*, vTv's novel antagonist of RAGE (the receptor for advanced glycation end products).

Under the terms of the agreement, Cantex will be responsible for the development and commercialization of *azeliragon* and the companies will allocate downstream profits under a tiered arrangement.

On January 9, 2023, Cantex announced that the FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation to *azeliragon* for the treatment of glioblastoma. In February 2022, Cantex secured a global license from Harvard University to further develop *azeliragon* as a treatment for inflammatory lung diseases, including COVID-19. In addition, a Phase 2 trial of *azeliragon* is in progress in women receiving "neoadjuvant chemotherapy" of breast cancer, which is chemotherapy to prevent cancer from returning after initial potentially curative treatment.

Inbound Partnerships

JDRF Agreement

In August 2017, we entered into a research and collaboration agreement with JDRF International (the "JDRF Agreement") to support the funding of the Simpli-T1 Study, a Phase 2 study to explore the effects of *TTP399* in patients with type 1 diabetes. The JDRF Agreement was amended in June 2021 to provide additional funding for the Company's mechanistic study exploring the effects of *TTP399* on ketone body formation during a period of insulin withdrawal in people with type 1 diabetes. According to the terms of the JDRF Agreement, as amended, JDRF provided research funding of \$3.4 million based on the achievement of research and development milestones. Additionally, the Company has the obligation to make certain milestone payments to JDRF upon the commercialization, licensing, sale or transfer of *TTP399* as a treatment for type 1 diabetes.

Novo Nordisk

In February 2007, we entered into an Agreement Concerning Glucokinase Activator Project with Novo Nordisk A/S (the "Novo License Agreement") whereby we obtained an exclusive, worldwide, sublicensable license under certain Novo Nordisk intellectual property rights to discover, develop, manufacture, have manufactured, use, and commercialize products for the prevention, treatment, control, mitigation, or palliation of human or animal diseases or conditions. As part of this license grant, we obtained certain worldwide rights to Novo Nordisk's GKA program, including rights to preclinical and clinical compounds such as *TTP399*. This agreement was amended in May 2019 to create milestone payments applicable to certain specific and non-specific areas of therapeutic use. Under the terms of the Novo License Agreement, the Company has additional potential developmental and regulatory milestone payments totaling up to \$9.0 million for approval of a product for the treatment of type 1 diabetes, \$50.5 million for approval of a product for the treatment of type 2 diabetes, or \$115.0 million for approval of a product in any other indication. The Company may also be obligated to pay an additional \$75.0 million in potential sales-based milestones, as well as royalty payments, at mid-single digit royalty rates, based on tiered sales of commercialized licensed products. During the year ended December 31, 2021, the Company made a payment of \$2.0 million related to the satisfaction of the milestone to complete the phase 2 trials for *TTP399* under this agreement.

Third-Party Suppliers and Manufacturers

We do not own or operate, and currently have no plans to establish, any manufacturing facilities. We currently rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties to manufacture clinical supplies of our drug candidates and for our other research and discovery programs. We do not have multiple sources of supply for the components used in our drug candidates.

Intellectual Property

Patents

The IP portfolio for *TTP399* includes issued patents in approximately 35 countries and territories, including the U.S., Europe, Japan, Canada, Australia, and China, directed to *TTP399* as a composition of matter. The issued U.S. patent covering *TTP399* as a composition of matter will expire no earlier than 2025, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions, but may expire as late as 2030 if, after approval by the U.S. FDA, we apply for and obtain the maximum possible PTE that is available under the Hatch-Waxman Act. Patents covering *TTP399* as a composition of matter outside the United States will expire no earlier than 2025, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions. Provisions that are similar to the U.S. PTE under the Hatch-Waxman Act are available in Europe and some other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of the patent

covering *TTP399* as a composition of matter. The IP portfolio for *TTP399* also includes patent families covering crystal forms, salt forms, and solid formulations of *TTP399* as well as combinations of *TTP399* with metformin, DPP-4 inhibitors, or GLP-1r agonists, and their use in methods of treatment. The IP portfolio also includes a patent family covering methods of treating type 1 diabetics using *TTP399* in combination with insulin. The patent applications in these additional patent families, if issued, would be expected to expire between 2031 and 2040, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions.

The IP portfolio for *HPP737* includes issued patents in the U.S. generically covering *HPP737* as a composition of matter and methods of use to treat various indications. The issued U.S. patent generically covering *HPP737* as a composition of matter will expire no earlier than 2029, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions, but may expire as late as 2034 if, after approval by the U.S. FDA, we apply for and obtain the maximum possible PTE that is available under the Hatch-Waxman Act. The IP portfolio for *HPP737* also includes a patent family specifically covering *HPP737* and another patent family covering a crystalline form of *HPP737*. Any patents issuing from these two patent families will expire in 2040, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions.

The IP portfolio for the GLP-1r program includes issued patents in over 25 countries and regions, including the U.S., Europe, Japan, Canada, Australia, and China, directed to *TTP273* as a composition of matter. The issued U.S. patent covering *TTP273* as a composition of matter will expire no earlier than 2030, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions, but may expire as late as 2035, if after approval by the U.S. FDA we apply for and obtain the maximum possible PTE that is available under the Hatch-Waxman Act following approval. Patents covering *TTP273* as a composition of matter outside the United States will expire no earlier than 2030, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions. Provisions that are similar to the U.S. PTE under the Hatch-Waxman Act are available in Europe and some other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of the patent covering *TTP273* as a composition of matter. The IP portfolio for *TTP273* also includes patent families covering crystalline, non-crystalline, and salt forms of *TTP273*, synthetic precursors to, and methods of manufacture of *TTP273*, as well as combinations of *TTP273* and metformin, and their use in methods of treatment, and dosage regimens of *TTP273*. The patent applications in these additional patent families, if issued, would be expected to expire between 2034 and 2040, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions.

The IP portfolio for the Nrf2/Bach1 program includes issued patents in approximately 25 countries and regions, including the U.S., Europe, Japan, Canada, Australia, and China, directed to *HPP971* and *HPP3033* as compositions of matter. The issued U.S. patent covering *HPP971* and *HPP3033* as compositions of matter will expire no earlier than 2031, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions. However, this issued U.S. patent may expire as late as 2037, if after approval by the U.S. FDA we apply for and obtain the maximum possible PTE that is available under the Hatch-Waxman Act following approval), and the patent term adjustments calculated by the USPTO are fully applied. Patents covering *HPP971* and *HPP3033* as a composition of matter outside the United States will expire no earlier than 2031, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions. Provisions that are similar to the U.S. PTE under the Hatch-Waxman Act are available in Europe and some other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of the patents covering *HPP971* and *HPP3033* as a composition of matter. The IP portfolio for the Nrf2/Bach1 program also includes patent families covering backup compounds, methods of use in combination with other Nrf2 activator compounds such as dimethyl fumarate and bardoxolone, and methods to treat sickle cell diseases, osteoporosis, and refractive ocular disorders. The patent applications in these additional patent families, if issued, would be expected to expire between 2035 and 2040, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions.

The IP portfolio for *azeliragon* includes issued patents in the U.S. directed to *azeliragon* as a composition of matter and methods of use to treat various indications. The issued U.S. patent covering *azeliragon* as a composition of matter will expire no earlier than 2023, absent any patent term adjustments and extensions. However, this issued patent may expire as late as 2029 if, after approval by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), we apply for and obtain the maximum possible patent term extension (PTE) that is available under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984 (the "Hatch-Waxman Act"), and the patent term adjustments calculated by the USPTO are fully applied. The IP portfolio for *azeliragon* also includes patent families covering polymorphs, salt forms, metabolites, degradation products and a synthetic precursor of *azeliragon*, methods of treatment using select dosage regimens of *azeliragon*, and methods of treating select patient populations. The patent applications in these additional patent families, if issued, would be expected to expire between 2028 and 2039. The issued U.S. patent covering the polymorph of *azeliragon* used in clinical development will expire no earlier than 2028, absent any patent term adjustments or extensions, but may expire as late as 2033 if after approval by the U.S. FDA we decide to apply for and obtain the maximum PTE under the Hatch-Waxman Act for the U.S. patent covering the polymorph of *azeliragon* instead of the U.S. patent covering *azeliragon* as a composition of matter. Only one patent applicable to an approved drug may be extended and only those claims covering the approved drug, a method of using it, or a method for manufacturing it may be extended. Similar provisions available in Europe and some other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of a patent that covers an approved drug.

Trade Secrets

In addition to patents, we rely on trade secrets and know-how to develop and maintain our competitive position. We seek to protect our proprietary technology and processes, in part, by entering into confidentiality agreements and invention assignment agreements with our employees, consultants, scientific advisors, contractors and commercial partners. These agreements are designed to protect our proprietary information and, in the case of the invention assignment agreements, to grant us ownership of technologies that are developed by employees or through a relationship with a third party. We also seek to preserve the integrity and confidentiality of our data and trade secrets by maintaining physical security of our premises and physical and electronic security of our information technology systems. While we have confidence in these individuals, organizations and systems, agreements or security measures may be breached, and we may not have adequate remedies for any breach. In addition, our trade secrets may otherwise become publicly known or be independently discovered by competitors. To the extent that our contractors use or incorporate intellectual property owned by others in their work for us, disputes may arise as to the rights in related or resulting know-how and inventions.

Competition

The biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by intense competition and rapid innovation. Our potential competitors include large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies and generic drug companies. We believe the key competitive factors that will affect the development and commercial success of our drug candidates are efficacy, safety and tolerability profile, mechanism of action, control and predictability, convenience of dosing, price and reimbursement, and availability of comparable alternative therapies.

Many of the companies against which we may compete have significantly greater financial resources and expertise in research and development, manufacturing, preclinical testing, conducting clinical trials, obtaining regulatory approvals, and marketing approved products than we do. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These competitors also compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel and establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient or are less expensive than any products that we may develop. Our competitors also may obtain FDA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market. The key competitive factors affecting the success of all our programs are likely to be their efficacy, safety, convenience, and availability of reimbursement.

Potential Competing Products – Type 1 Diabetes

If approved, we expect that our type 1 diabetes investigational drug candidate will compete with oral non-insulin agents that are currently being developed or which have limited approval in certain jurisdictions. These include SGLT-1/2 inhibitors, such as sotagliflozin, being developed by Lexicon and SGLT-2 inhibitors such as AstraZeneca's dapagliflozin, both of which are approved for limited use in the European Union and Japan as well as Eli Lilly/Boehringer Ingelheim's empagliflozin, which is not currently approved for the treatment of type 1 diabetes. None of these treatments are approved for treatment of type 1 diabetes in the United States.

Collaboration Revenue and Customers

Most of our collaboration revenue for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020 is related to our licenses of certain compounds in the preclinical stage or clinical stage, including the Cantex License Agreement, Anteris License Agreement, Huadong License Agreement, the Reneo License Agreement, and the Newsoara License Agreement. Revenue recognized in these periods relates to initial consideration received in the form of upfront payments and equity interests, research activities performed by our personnel, and the achievement of development milestones.

Government Regulation and Product Approvals

Government authorities in the United States, at the federal, state and local level, and in other countries and jurisdictions, including the European Union ("EU"), extensively regulate, among other things, the research, development, testing, manufacture, pricing, reimbursement, sales, quality control, approval, packaging, storage, recordkeeping, labeling, advertising, promotion, distribution, marketing, post-approval monitoring and reporting, and import and export of biopharmaceutical products. The processes for obtaining marketing approvals in the United States and in foreign countries and jurisdictions, along with compliance with applicable statutes and regulations and other regulatory authorities, require the

expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. For a full discussion of the regulatory framework for the approval and regulation of investigational drug candidates, and applicable domestic and foreign healthcare law, please see “Part 1 – Item 1 – Business - Government Regulation and Product Approvals” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on February 21, 2020.

Human Capital

As of December 31, 2022, we had thirteen employees (all but four of whom work in North Carolina), of which at least eight hold graduate degrees (including six doctorate degrees) and six are engaged in full-time research and development activities. None of our employees are represented by a labor union, and we consider our employee relations to be good.

Our Corporate Information

We were incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware in 2015. Our principal executive offices are located at 3980 Premier Drive, Suite 310, High Point, NC 27265, and our telephone number is (336) 841-0300. We also maintain a corporate website, www.vtvtherapeutics.com, where stockholders and other interested persons may review, without charge, among other things, corporate governance materials and certain Securities Exchange Commission (SEC) filings, which are generally available on the same business day as the filing date with the SEC on the SEC’s website <http://www.sec.gov>. The contents of our website are not made a part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

Summary of Principal Risk Factors

Our business is subject to a number of risks, including risks that may prevent us from achieving our business objectives or may adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows, and prospects. These risks are discussed more fully below and include, but are not limited to, risks related to:

Our Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital

- our ability to achieve or maintain profitability;
- our ability to generate revenue in absence of any products approved for sale;
- our need for additional capital to continue the development and commercialization of our drug candidates;
- the impact of raising additional capital to our stockholders and the rights of our drug candidates.

The Development and Regulatory Approval of Our Drug Candidates

- the potential failure of our clinical trials or our inability to receive regulatory approval for our drug candidates;
- the identification of serious adverse or unacceptable side effects which are determined to be drug-related;
- the impact of changes in law or regulatory policy on the approval of our drug candidates;
- the impact of delays in the commencement, enrollment and completion of our clinical trials;
- our ability to submit an NDA for the drug candidates we are developing;

Risks Relating to the Commercialization of Our Drug Candidates

- the acceptance of drug candidates in the market, if approved by the appropriate regulatory agencies;
- our ability to establish sales and marketing capabilities or enter into agreements with third parties to sell and market our drug candidates;
- the impact of ongoing obligations and continued regulatory review for our drug candidates post-commercialization;
- competition with other products;
- the impact of healthcare cost containment initiatives and the growth of managed care;
- our ability to obtain marketing approval for our drug candidates and obtain profitable pricing once approved;
- the impact of healthcare laws and regulations on our relationships with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers (actual and potential) and third-party payors;
- our ability to obtain approval to commercialize products outside the United States;

Risks Relating to Our Dependence on Third Parties

- our ability to establish and maintain collaborative relationships to further the development of our drug candidates;
- the professional conduct of third parties we rely on to conduct, supervise and monitor certain of our clinical trials;
- our dependence on limited sources of supply for the components used in TTP399 and our other drug candidates;
- our reliance on third-party manufacturers to produce our drug candidates;

Risks Relating to Our Intellectual Property

- our ability to continue to protect proprietary rights to our intellectual property;
- the unauthorized disclosure of our trade secrets or other confidential information;
- the impact of changes to the patent laws in the United States and other jurisdictions;
- the impact of litigation for infringing intellectual property rights of third parties;
- the impact of litigation to protect or enforce our patents or other intellectual property;
- our ability to enforce our intellectual property rights throughout the world;
- our ability to obtain patent term extensions for our drug candidates;

Risks Relating to Employee Matters and Managing Growth

- the impact of expanding our operations and managing growth;
- our ability to attract and retain key personnel;

- the impact of our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, consultants and collaborators in the event that they engage in misconduct or other improper activities;

Other Risks Relating to Our Business

- the impact of the widespread outbreak of an illness or any other communicable disease, or any other public health crisis;
- the impact of COVID-19 on our clinical trials, the operations of our licensees and our financial results;
- the impact of using our financial and human resources to pursue a particular research program or drug candidate and failing to capitalize on programs or drug candidates that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success;
- the impact of litigation and government investigations, including product liability lawsuits;
- the exposure to uninsured liabilities;
- our ability to remain competitive given the rapidly changing market for our proposed drug candidates;
- the impact of computer system failures, cyber-attacks or a deficiency in our cyber-security;

Risks Related to our Common Stock

- our ability to maintain listing of our Class A common stock on Nasdaq
- the impact of MacAndrews' substantial influence over our business;
- the potential for conflicts of interest with our directors who have relationships with MacAndrews;
- our ability to pay cash dividends;
- the potential for securities class action litigation;
- the impact of research and reports that equity research analysts publish about us and our business;
- the impact of substantial sales of shares into the market at any time;
- the dilution created by future sales and issuances of our Class A common stock or rights to purchase Class A common stock;
- our reliance upon our "smaller reporting company" status;
- our exemption from certain corporate governance requirements since we are a "controlled company";
- the existence of provisions in our governing documents or state law which may delay or prevent our acquisition by a third party;
- our obligation to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement;
- our ability to make distributions from vTv LLC to satisfy our obligations;
- the benefits conferred upon M&F that will not benefit Class A common stockholders to the same extent as it will benefit MacAndrews.

Risks Relating to Our Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital

We have incurred significant losses since inception and anticipate that we will incur continued losses for the foreseeable future. We may never achieve or maintain profitability.

We are a clinical stage pharmaceutical company with limited operating history. We have never been profitable and do not expect to be profitable in the foreseeable future. We have incurred net losses in each year since beginning to develop our drug candidates, including net losses of approximately \$19.2 million, \$13.0 million and \$8.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, respectively. As of December 31, 2022, we had a total accumulated deficit of approximately \$265.5 million. In addition, we have not commercialized any products and have never generated any revenue from the commercialization of any product. We have devoted most of our financial resources to research and development, including our preclinical development activities and clinical trials. We expect to incur significant additional operating losses for the next several years, at least, as we conduct our research and development activities, advance drug candidates through clinical development, complete clinical trials, seek regulatory approval and, if we receive FDA approval, commercialize our products. Furthermore, the costs of advancing drugs into each succeeding clinical phase tend to increase substantially over time. The total costs to advance any of our drug candidates to marketing approval in even a single jurisdiction would be substantial. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with pharmaceutical product development, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of increased expenses or when, or if, we will be able to begin generating

revenue from the commercialization of products or achieve or maintain profitability. We expect to continue to incur significant additional expenses as we continue the development of *TTP399*. Furthermore, our ability to successfully develop, commercialize and license our products and generate product revenue is subject to substantial additional risks and uncertainties, as described under “—Risks Relating to the Discovery, Development and Regulatory Approval of Our Drug Candidates” and “—Risks Relating to the Commercialization of Our Drug Candidates.” As a result, we expect to continue to incur net losses and negative cash flows for the foreseeable future. These net losses and negative cash flows have had, and will continue to have, an adverse effect on our stockholders’ equity and working capital. The amount of our future net losses will depend, in part, on the rate of future growth of our expenses and our ability to generate revenues. In addition, we may not be able to enter into any collaborations that will generate significant cash. If we are unable to develop and commercialize one or more of our drug candidates either alone or with collaborators, or if revenues from any drug candidate that receives marketing approval are insufficient, we will not achieve profitability. Even if we do achieve profitability, we may not be able to sustain or increase profitability. If we are unable to achieve and then maintain profitability, the value of our equity securities will be materially and adversely affected.

Currently, we have no products approved for commercial sale, and to date we have not generated any revenue from product sales. As a result, our ability to generate revenue from products, curtail our losses and reach profitability is unproven, and we may never generate substantial product revenue.

We have no products approved for commercialization and have never generated any revenue from the commercialization of any product. Our ability to generate revenue and achieve profitability depends on our ability, alone or with strategic collaboration partners, to successfully complete the development of, and obtain the regulatory and marketing approvals necessary to commercialize one or more of our product candidates. We do not anticipate generating revenue from product sales for several years. Our ability to generate future revenue from product sales depends heavily on our success in many areas, including but not limited to:

- completing research and nonclinical and clinical development of our product candidates;
- obtaining regulatory and marketing approvals for product candidates for which we complete clinical studies;
- establishing collaborations for the development of certain of our drug candidates;
- establishing and maintaining supply and manufacturing relationships with third parties that can provide adequate, in both amount and quality, products and services to support clinical development and the market demand for our product candidates, if approved;
- launching and commercializing product candidates for which we obtain regulatory and marketing approval, either directly or with a collaborator or distributor;
- obtaining market acceptance of our product candidates as viable treatment options;
- obtaining favorable formulary placement with government and third-party payors that allows for favorable reimbursement;
- addressing any competing technological and market developments;
- negotiating favorable terms in any collaboration, licensing, or other arrangements into which we may enter;
- maintaining, protecting and expanding our portfolio of intellectual property rights; and
- attracting, hiring and retaining qualified personnel.

Even if one or more of the product candidates that we develop is approved for commercial sale, we anticipate incurring significant costs associated with commercializing any approved product candidate. Our expenses could increase beyond expectations if we are required by the FDA or other regulatory authorities to perform clinical and other studies in addition to those that we currently anticipate. Even if we are able to generate revenues from the sale of any approved products, we may not become profitable and may need to obtain additional funding to continue operations.

We will need additional capital to complete the development and commercialization of TTP399 and our other drug candidates, and there is a substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. If we are unable to raise sufficient capital for these purposes, we would be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our product development programs.

Developing pharmaceutical products, including conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, is expensive. We expect to continue to incur significant research and development expenses in connection with our ongoing activities, particularly as we undertake additional clinical trials of *TTP399* and our other drug candidates and continue to work on our other research programs. Our current capital will not be sufficient for us to complete the development of our drug candidates.

As such, we will need to raise additional capital to fund the ongoing and planned trials for our drug candidates and prior to the commercialization of any of our drug candidates. We are seeking possible additional partnering opportunities and grants for our GKA, GLP-1r and other drug candidates which we believe may provide additional cash for use in our operations and the continuation of the clinical trials for our drug candidates. We also continue to evaluate other financing strategies to fund our ongoing trials. Such financing strategies include direct equity investments and future public offerings of our common stock. The timing and availability of such financing are not yet known.

If the FDA or other regulators require that we perform additional studies beyond those we currently expect, or if there are any delays in completing our clinical trials or the development of any of our drug candidates, our expenses could increase beyond what we currently anticipate and the timing of any potential product approval may be delayed. We have no commitments or arrangements for any additional financing to fund our research and development programs other than the funds available to us under our Controlled Equity OfferingSM Sales Agreement (the “Sales Agreement”) with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. (“Cantor Fitzgerald”) (the “ATM Offering”) and our purchase agreement with Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC (“Lincoln Park”) (the “LPC Purchase Agreement”). Under both of these arrangements, the Company has the right to sell shares of the Company’s Class A common stock, subject to certain limitations and conditions as set forth in the related agreements. As of March 6, 2023, there remains \$37.3 million of availability under the ATM offering. While the LPC Purchase Agreement allows for sales of up to \$47.0 million, we have issued 5,331,306 of these shares for gross proceeds of approximately \$11.1 million. Though we can register additional shares for sale under this agreement, such sales may be limited by the conditions set forth in the LPC Purchase Agreement. In addition, our ability to use these sources of capital is dependent on a number of factors, including the prevailing market price of and the volume of trading in our Class A common stock. We also will need to raise substantial additional capital in the future to conduct further clinical trials of *TTP399* and to continue developing our other drug candidates. Although we are seeking financing, partnering and licensing transactions for the further development of *TTP399*, these efforts may not be successful. Because successful development of our drug candidates is uncertain, we are unable to estimate the actual funds required to complete research and development and commercialize and license our products under development.

Until such time that we can generate substantial revenue from product sales, we expect to finance our operating activities through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. We may seek to access the public or private capital markets whenever conditions are favorable, even if we do not have an immediate need for additional capital at that time. If worldwide economic conditions and the international equity and credit markets deteriorate and return to depressed states, it will be more difficult for us to obtain additional equity or credit financing, when needed.

Our recurring losses, accumulated deficit and our current levels of cash and cash equivalents raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern as of the date of this report. If we are unable to continue as a going concern, we may have to liquidate our assets and it is likely that investors will lose all or a significant part of their investments. If we seek additional financing to fund our business activities in the future and there remains substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern, investors or other financing sources may be unwilling to provide additional funding to us on commercially reasonable terms or at all, and such additional funding may cause substantial dilution to our existing investors. Further, if adequate funds are not available, we may be required to delay, reduce the scope of or eliminate one or more of our research or development programs.

Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- the progress, costs, results and timing of our planned registrational trial(s) for *TTP399* as a potential adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of type 1 diabetes;
- the outcome, costs and timing of seeking and obtaining FDA and any other regulatory approvals;
- the number and characteristics of drug candidates that we pursue, including our drug candidates in preclinical development;
- the ability of our drug candidates to progress through clinical development successfully;
- our need to expand our research and development activities;
- the costs associated with securing, establishing and maintaining commercialization capabilities;
- the costs of acquiring, licensing or investing in businesses, products, drug candidates and technologies;
- our ability to maintain, expand and defend the scope of our intellectual property portfolio, including the amount and timing of any payments we may be required to make, or that we may receive, in connection with the licensing, filing, prosecution, defense and enforcement of any patents or other intellectual property rights;

- our need and ability to hire additional management and scientific and medical personnel;
- the effect of competing technological and market developments;
- our need to implement additional internal systems and infrastructure, including financial and reporting systems;
- the economic and other terms, timing and success of our existing licensing arrangements and any collaboration, licensing or other arrangements into which we may enter in the future; and
- the amount of any payments we are required to make to M&F TTP Holdings Two LLC in the future under the Tax Receivable Agreement.

Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our stockholders, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our technologies or drug candidates.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial revenue, we may finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. We do not currently have any committed external source of funds other than those available to us under the ATM Offering and LPC Purchase Agreement. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the interest of our stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect the rights of our common stockholders. Debt financing and preferred equity financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends.

If we raise additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or marketing, distribution or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may be required to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams or drug candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market drug candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

We have a limited operating history, and we expect a number of factors to cause our operating results to fluctuate on a quarterly and annual basis, which may make it difficult to predict our future performance.

We are a clinical stage pharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. Our operations to date have been primarily limited to developing our technology and undertaking preclinical studies and clinical trials of *TTP399* and our other drug candidates. We have not yet obtained regulatory approvals for any of our drug candidates. Consequently, any statements about our future success or viability are not based on any substantial operating history or commercialized products. Our financial condition and operating results have varied significantly in the past and will continue to fluctuate from quarter-to-quarter or year-to-year due to a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control. As a result, we may never successfully develop and commercialize a product, which could lead to a material adverse effect on the value of any investment in our securities.

Risks Relating to the Development, Regulatory Approval, and Commercialization of Our Drug Candidates

Our development efforts are focused on the continued development of TTP399. There can be no assurance that we will be able to implement our business strategy successfully.

Our development focus is on the continued development of *TTP399* as a potential adjunctive treatment for patients with type 1 diabetes and supporting our currently partnered programs. If we are not able to successfully execute our business strategy and do not achieve the anticipated benefits, our business, results of operations and financial condition could suffer.

Clinical drug development involves a lengthy and expensive process with an uncertain outcome, and failure can occur at any stage of clinical development. Because the results of earlier clinical trials are not necessarily predictive of future results, any drug candidate we advance through various stages of clinical trials or development may not have favorable results in later stages of clinical trials or development or receive regulatory approval.

Clinical testing is expensive and can take many years to complete, and its outcome is inherently uncertain. Failure can occur at any stage of clinical development. Clinical trials may produce negative or inconclusive results, and we may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical or preclinical trials. In addition, data obtained from trials are susceptible to varying interpretations, and regulators may not interpret our data as favorably as we do, which may delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. Success in preclinical testing and early clinical trials does not ensure that later clinical trials will generate the same results or otherwise provide adequate data to demonstrate the efficacy and safety of a drug candidate. Frequently, drug candidates that have shown promising results in early clinical trials have subsequently suffered significant

setbacks in later clinical trials. In addition, the design of a clinical trial can determine whether its results will support approval of a product and flaws in the design of a clinical trial may not become apparent until the clinical trial is well advanced. While members of our management team have experience in designing clinical trials, our company has limited experience in designing clinical trials, and we may be unable to design and execute a clinical trial to support regulatory approval. Further, clinical trials of potential products often reveal that it is not practical or feasible to continue development efforts. For example, if the results of our future clinical trials of our drug candidates do not achieve the primary efficacy endpoints or demonstrate safety, the prospects for approval of these candidates would be materially and adversely affected. If our drug candidates are found to be unsafe or lack efficacy, we will not be able to obtain regulatory approval for them and our business would be materially harmed.

We cannot be certain that any of our drug candidates will receive regulatory approval, and without regulatory approval we will not be able to market our drug candidates and generate revenue from products. Any delay in the regulatory review or approval of our drug candidates will materially and adversely affect our business.

Our ability to generate revenue related to product sales, which we do not expect will occur for at least the next several years, if ever, will depend on the successful development and regulatory approval of our drug candidates. Our clinical development programs for our drug candidates may not lead to regulatory approval from the FDA and similar foreign regulatory agencies. This failure to obtain regulatory approvals would prevent our drug candidates from being marketed and would prevent us from generating revenue from our drug candidates, which would have a material and adverse effect on our business.

All of our drug candidates require regulatory review and approval prior to commercialization, and generally, only a small percentage of pharmaceutical products under development are ultimately approved for commercial sale. Moreover, any delays in the regulatory review or approval of our drug candidates would delay market launch, increase our cash requirements and result in additional operating losses.

The process of obtaining FDA and other required regulatory approvals, including foreign approvals, often takes many years and can vary substantially based upon the type, complexity and novelty of the products involved. Furthermore, this approval process is extremely complex, expensive and uncertain, and failure to comply with applicable regulatory requirements can, among other things, result in the suspension of regulatory approval as well as possible civil and criminal sanctions. We may be unable to submit any new drug application (“NDA”), in the United States or any marketing approval application in foreign jurisdictions for any of our products. If we submit an NDA including any amended NDA or supplemental NDA, to the FDA seeking marketing approval for any of our drug candidates, the FDA must decide whether to accept or reject the submission for filing. We cannot be certain that any of these submissions will be accepted for filing and reviewed by the FDA, or that the marketing approval application submissions to any other regulatory authorities will be accepted for filing and review by those authorities. We cannot be certain that we will be able to respond to any regulatory requests during the review period in a timely manner, or at all, without delaying potential regulatory action. We also cannot be certain that any of our drug candidates will receive favorable recommendations from any FDA advisory committee or foreign regulatory bodies or be approved for marketing by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities. In addition, delays in approvals or rejections of marketing applications may be based upon many factors, including regulatory requests for additional analyses, reports, data and studies, regulatory questions regarding data and results, changes in regulatory policy during the period of product development and the emergence of new information regarding our drug candidates.

Data obtained from preclinical studies and clinical trials are subject to different interpretations, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory review or approval of any of our drug candidates. Furthermore, regulatory attitudes towards the data and results required to demonstrate safety and efficacy can change over time and can be affected by many factors, such as the emergence of new information, including on other products, policy changes and agency funding, staffing and leadership. We do not know whether future changes to the regulatory environment will be favorable or unfavorable to our business prospects.

In addition, the environment in which our regulatory submissions may be reviewed changes over time. For example, average review times at the FDA for NDAs have fluctuated over the last ten years, and we cannot predict the review time for any of our submissions with any regulatory authorities. Review times can be affected by a variety of factors, including budget and funding levels and statutory, regulatory and policy as well as personnel changes at the FDA. Moreover, in light of widely publicized events concerning the safety risk of certain drug products, regulatory authorities, members of the U.S. Government Accountability Office, medical professionals and the general public have raised concerns about potential drug safety issues. These events have resulted in the withdrawal of drug products, revisions to drug labeling that further limit use of the drug products and establishment of risk evaluation and mitigation strategies (“REMS”), measures that may, for instance, place restrictions on the distribution of new drug products. The increased attention to drug safety issues may result in a more cautious approach by the FDA to clinical trials. Data from clinical trials may receive greater scrutiny with respect to safety,

which may make the FDA or other regulatory authorities more likely to delay or terminate clinical trials before completion, or require longer or additional clinical trials that may result in substantial additional expense and a delay or failure in obtaining approval or may result in approval for a more limited indication than originally sought.

In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a drug candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions, and approval in one jurisdiction does not guarantee approval in any other jurisdiction. Our drug candidates could fail to receive regulatory approval for many reasons, including the following:

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design or implementation of our clinical trials;
- we may be unable to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that a drug candidate is safe and effective for its proposed indication;
- the results of clinical trials may not meet the level of statistical significance required by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities for approval;
- we may be unable to demonstrate that a drug candidate's clinical and other benefits outweigh its safety risks;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data from preclinical studies or clinical trials;
- the data collected from clinical trials of our drug candidates may not be sufficient to support the submission of an NDA or other submission or to obtain regulatory approval in the United States or elsewhere;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may fail to approve the manufacturing processes or facilities of third-party manufacturers with which we contract for clinical and commercial supplies;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may fail to approve the companion diagnostics we contemplate developing with partners; and
- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

This lengthy approval process as well as the unpredictability of future clinical trial results may result in our failing to obtain regulatory approval to market our drug candidates, which would significantly harm our business, results of operations and prospects.

In addition, even if we were to obtain approval, regulatory authorities may approve any of our drug candidates for fewer or more limited indications than we request, may not approve the price we intend to charge for our products, may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials, or may approve a drug candidate with a label that does not include the labeling claims necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of that drug candidate. Any of the foregoing scenarios could materially harm the commercial prospects for our drug candidates.

Changes in law could have a negative impact on the approval of our drug candidates.

The FDA has established regulations, guidelines and policies to govern the drug development and approval process, as have foreign regulatory authorities. Any change in regulatory requirements resulting from the adoption of new legislation, regulations or policies may require us to amend existing clinical trial protocols or add new clinical trials to comply with these changes. Such amendments to existing protocols or clinical trial applications or the need for new ones, may significantly and adversely affect the cost, timing and completion of the clinical trials for our drug candidates. In addition, the FDA's policies may change and additional government regulations may be issued that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of our drug candidates, or impose more stringent product labeling and post-marketing testing and other requirements. If we are slow or unable to adapt to any such changes, our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability would be adversely affected.

Delays in the commencement, enrollment and completion of our clinical trials could result in increased costs to us and delay or limit our ability to obtain regulatory approval for our drug candidates.

Delays in the commencement, enrollment and completion of clinical trials could increase our product development costs or limit the regulatory approval of our drug candidates. We do not know whether current or future clinical trials of our

drug candidates will begin on time or at all or will be completed on schedule or at all. The commencement, enrollment and completion of our clinical trials can be delayed for a variety of reasons, including:

- inability to reach agreements on acceptable terms with prospective contract research organizations (CRO) and trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;
- regulatory objections to commencing a clinical trial;
- inability to identify and maintain a sufficient number of trial sites, many of which may already be engaged in other clinical trial programs, including some that may be for the same indication as our drug candidates;
- withdrawal of clinical trial sites from our clinical trials as a result of changing standards of care or the ineligibility of a site to participate in our clinical trials;
- inability to obtain institutional review board (“IRB”), approval to conduct a clinical trial;
- difficulty recruiting and enrolling subjects to participate in clinical trials for a variety of reasons, including willingness of subjects to undergo required study procedures, meeting the enrollment criteria for our study and competition from other clinical trial programs for the same indication as our drug candidates;
- inability to recruit and retain subjects in clinical trials due to the treatment protocol, personal issues, side effects from the therapy or lack of efficacy; and
- difficulty in importing and exporting clinical trial materials and study samples.

Patient enrollment, a significant factor in the timing of clinical trials, is affected by many factors including the size and nature of the patient population, the proximity of patients to clinical sites, the eligibility criteria for the trial, the design of the clinical trial, competing clinical trials and clinicians’ and patients’ perceptions as to the potential advantages of the drug being studied in relation to other available therapies, including any new drugs that may be approved for the indications we are investigating. Furthermore, we rely on CROs and clinical trial sites to ensure the proper and timely conduct of our clinical trials and while we have agreements governing their committed activities, we have limited influence over their actual performance.

We could also encounter delays if a clinical trial is suspended or terminated by us, by the IRBs of the institutions in which such trials are being conducted, by the Data and Safety Monitoring Board (DSMB) for such trial or by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. Such authorities may impose such a suspension or termination due to a number of factors, including:

- failure to conduct the clinical trial in accordance with regulatory requirements or our clinical protocols;
- failure to pass inspection of the clinical trial operations or trial sites by the FDA or other regulatory authorities;
- failure of any contract manufacturing organizations (“CMOs”), that we use to comply with current Good Manufacturing Practices (“cGMPs”);
- unforeseen safety issues or any determination that a clinical trial presents unacceptable health risks;
- failure to demonstrate benefit from using the drug; or
- changes in the regulatory requirement and guidance.

If we experience delays in the completion of, or termination of, any clinical trial of our drug candidates, the commercial prospects of our drug candidates will be harmed, and our ability to generate product revenues from any of these drug candidates will be delayed. In addition, any delays in completing our clinical trials will increase our costs, slow down our drug candidate development and approval process and jeopardize our ability to commence product sales and generate revenues. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and prospects significantly. In addition, many of the factors that cause, or lead to, a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of our drug candidates.

We have never submitted an NDA before and may be unable to do so for TTP399 and our other drug candidates we are developing.

The submission of a successful NDA is a complicated process. As a team, we have limited experience in preparing, submitting and prosecuting regulatory filings, and have not submitted an NDA before. Consequently, we may be unable to successfully and efficiently execute and complete clinical trials in a way that leads to an NDA submission and approval of

any of our drug candidates. We may require more time and incur greater costs than our competitors and may not succeed in obtaining regulatory approvals of the drug candidates that we develop. Failure to commence or complete, or delays in, our planned clinical trials would prevent or delay commercialization of the drug candidates we are developing.

Our drug candidates may cause serious adverse events or undesirable side effects which may delay or prevent marketing approval, or, if approval is received, require them to be taken off the market, require them to include safety warnings or otherwise limit their sales.

Serious adverse events or undesirable side effects from any of our drug candidates could arise either during clinical development or, if approved, after the approved product has been marketed. The results of future clinical trials may show that our drug candidates cause serious adverse events or undesirable side effects, which could interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials, resulting in delay of, or failure to obtain, marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities or could result in a more restrictive label if our drug candidates are approved.

Further, we, and our clinical trial investigators, currently determine if serious adverse or unacceptable side effects are drug-related. The FDA or non-U.S. regulatory authorities may disagree with our or our clinical trial investigators' interpretation of data from clinical trials and the conclusion by us or our clinical trial investigators that a serious adverse effect or unacceptable side effect was not drug-related. The FDA or non-U.S. regulatory authorities may require more information, including additional preclinical or clinical data to support approval, which may cause us to incur additional expenses, delay or prevent the approval of one of our drug candidates, and/or delay or cause us to change our commercialization plans, or we may decide to abandon the development or commercialization of the drug candidate altogether.

If any of our drug candidates cause serious adverse events or undesirable side effects either during clinical development, or after marketing approval, if obtained:

- regulatory authorities, IRBs, or the DSMB may impose a clinical hold, or we may decide on our own to suspend or terminate a study, which could result in substantial delays and adversely impact our ability to continue development of the product;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, specific warnings, contraindications or field alerts to study subjects, investigators, physicians or pharmacies;
- we may be required to change the product design or the way the product is administered, conduct additional clinical trials or change the labeling of the product;
- we may be required to implement a REMS, which could result in substantial cost increases or signification limitations on distribution or have a negative impact on our ability to successfully commercialize the product;
- we may be required to limit the patients who can receive the product;
- we may be subject to limitations on how we promote the product;
- sales of the product may decrease significantly;
- regulatory authorities may require us to take our approved product off the market;
- we may be subject to litigation or product liability claims; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from obtaining approval or achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product, if approved, or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which in turn could delay or prevent us from generating significant revenues from the sale of our products.

If any of our drug candidates for which we receive regulatory approval do not achieve broad market acceptance, the revenues that are generated from their sales will be limited.

The commercial success of our drug candidates, if approved, will depend upon the acceptance of these products among physicians, healthcare payors, patients and others in the medical community. The degree of market acceptance of our drug candidates will depend on a number of factors, including:

- limitations or warnings contained in a product's FDA-approved labeling;
- changes in the standard of care or the availability of alternative therapies for the targeted indications for any of our drug candidates;

- limitations in the approved indications for our drug candidates;
- demonstrated clinical safety and efficacy compared to other products;
- lack of significant adverse side effects;
- education, sales, marketing and distribution support;
- availability and degree of coverage and reimbursement from third-party payors;
- timing of market introduction and perceived effectiveness of competitive products;
- cost-effectiveness;
- availability of alternative therapies at similar or lower cost, including generics, biosimilar and over-the-counter products;
- adverse publicity about our drug candidates or favorable publicity about competitive products;
- convenience and ease of administration of our products;
- potential product liability claims; and
- government-imposed pricing restrictions.

If our drug candidates are approved, but do not achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians, healthcare payors, patients and others in the medical community, sufficient revenue may not be generated from these products, and we may not become or remain profitable. In addition, efforts to educate the medical community and third-party payors on the benefits of our drug candidates may require significant resources and may not be successful.

If, in the future, we are unable to establish sales and marketing capabilities or enter into agreements with third parties to sell and market our drug candidates, we may not be successful in commercializing our drug candidates if and when they are approved.

We do not have a sales or marketing infrastructure and have no experience in the sale or marketing of pharmaceutical drugs. To achieve commercial success for any approved drug for which sales and marketing is not the responsibility of any strategic collaborator that we may have in the future, we must either develop a sales and marketing organization or outsource these functions to other third parties. In the future, we may choose to build a sales and marketing infrastructure to market our drug candidates, if and when they are approved, or enter into collaborations with respect to the sale and marketing of our drug candidate.

There are risks involved with both establishing our own sales and marketing capabilities and entering into arrangements with third parties to perform these services. For example, recruiting and training a sales force is expensive and time-consuming and could delay any commercial launch of a drug candidate. If the commercial launch of a drug candidate for which we recruit a sales force and establish marketing capabilities is delayed or does not occur for any reason, we would have prematurely or unnecessarily incurred these commercialization expenses. This may be costly, and our investment would be lost if we cannot retain or reposition our sales and marketing personnel.

Factors that may inhibit our efforts to commercialize our drugs on our own include:

- our inability to recruit and retain adequate numbers of effective sales and marketing personnel;
- the inability of sales personnel to obtain access to physicians or persuade adequate numbers of physicians to prescribe any future drugs;
- the lack of complementary drugs to be offered by sales personnel, which may put us at a competitive disadvantage relative to companies with more extensive drug lines;
- unforeseen costs and expenses associated with creating an independent sales and marketing organization; and
- inability to obtain sufficient coverage and reimbursement from third-party payors and governmental agencies.

Entering into arrangements with third parties to perform sales and marketing services may result in lower revenues from the sale of drug or the profitability of these revenues to us than if we were to market and sell any drugs that we develop ourselves. In addition, we may not be successful in entering into arrangements with third parties to sell and market our drug candidates or may be unable to do so on terms that are favorable to us. We likely will have little control over such third parties, and any of them may fail to devote the necessary resources and attention to sell and market our drugs effectively. If

we do not establish sales and marketing capabilities successfully, either on our own or in collaboration with third parties, we will not be successful in commercializing our drug candidates.

Even if our drug candidates receive regulatory approval, we will still be subject to ongoing obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense, and we may still face future development and regulatory difficulties.

Even if regulatory approval is obtained for any of our drug candidates, regulatory authorities may still impose significant restrictions on a product's indicated uses or marketing or impose ongoing requirements for potentially costly post-approval studies. Given the number of high profile adverse safety events with certain drug products, regulatory authorities may require, as a condition of approval, a costly REMS, which may include safety surveillance, restricted distribution and use, patient education, enhanced labeling, expedited reporting of certain adverse events, pre-approval of promotional materials and restrictions on direct-to-consumer advertising. For example, any labeling approved for any of our drug candidates may include a restriction on the term of its use, or it may not include one or more of our intended indications or patient populations. Furthermore, any new legislation addressing drug safety issues could result in delays or increased costs during the period of product development, clinical trials and regulatory review and approval, as well as increased costs to assure compliance with any new post-approval regulatory requirements.

Our drug candidates will also be subject to ongoing regulatory requirements for the labeling, packaging, storage, advertising, promotion, record-keeping and submission of safety and other post-market information. In addition, sellers of approved products, manufacturers and manufacturers' facilities are required to comply with extensive FDA requirements, including ensuring that quality control and manufacturing procedures conform to cGMP. As such, we and our CMOs are subject to continual review and periodic inspections to assess compliance with cGMP and the terms and conditions of approvals. Accordingly, we and others with whom we work must continue to expend time, money and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production and quality control. We will also be required to report certain adverse reactions and production problems, if any, to the FDA, and to comply with certain requirements concerning advertising and promotion for our products. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved label. As such, we may not promote our products for indications or uses for which they do not have approval.

If a regulatory agency discovers problems with a product, such as adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or problems with the facility where the product is manufactured, or objects to the promotion, marketing or labeling of a product, it may impose restrictions on that product or us, including requiring withdrawal of the product from the market. If our drug candidates fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, a regulatory agency may:

- issue warning letters or untitled letters;
- mandate modifications to promotional materials or require us to disseminate corrective information to healthcare practitioners or other parties;
- require us to enter into a consent decree or permanent injunction, which can include imposition of various fines, reimbursements for inspection costs, required due dates for specific actions and penalties for noncompliance;
- impose other civil or criminal penalties;
- suspend or withdraw regulatory approval;
- suspend any ongoing clinical trials;
- refuse to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications filed by us;
- impose restrictions on operations, including costly new manufacturing requirements; or
- seize or detain products or require a product recall.

The FDA's policies may change, and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of our drug candidates. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained, which would adversely affect our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

We expect that our existing and future drug candidates will face competition, and most of our competitors have significantly greater resources than we do.

The biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by intense competition and rapid innovation. Our potential competitors include large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies, generic or biosimilar drug companies, universities and other research institutions. Our drug candidates, if successfully developed and approved, will compete in crowded and competitive markets. In order to compete with approved products, our drug candidates will need to demonstrate compelling advantages. We believe the key competitive factors that will affect the development and commercial success of our drug candidates are efficacy, safety and tolerability profile, mechanism of action, control and predictability, convenience of dosing and price and reimbursement.

Oral non-insulin agents that are currently being developed to treat type 1 diabetes that may compete with *TTP399* include SGLT-1/2 inhibitors, such as sotagliflozin, being developed by Lexicon and SGLT-2 inhibitors such as AstraZeneca's dapagliflozin and Eli Lilly/Boehringer Ingelheim's empagliflozin. Some of these SGLT-1 and SGLT-2 inhibitors have been approved for certain sub-groups of type 1 diabetics in Europe and Japan, but these therapies have not yet been approved for use in the U.S. due to safety risks including those pertaining to diabetic ketoacidosis.

Many of our potential competitors have substantially greater:

- resources, including capital, personnel and technology;
- research and development capability;
- clinical trial expertise;
- regulatory expertise;
- intellectual property rights, including patent rights;
- expertise in obtaining, maintaining, defending and enforcing intellectual property rights, including patent rights;
- manufacturing and distribution expertise; and
- sales and marketing expertise.

In addition, academic and government institutions are increasingly likely to enter into exclusive licensing agreements with commercial enterprises, including our competitors, to market commercial products based on technology developed at such institutions. Many of these competitors have significant products approved or in development that could be competitive with our products.

Accordingly, our competitors may be more successful than us in obtaining regulatory approval for drugs and achieving widespread market acceptance. Our competitors' drugs may be more effective, less costly, or more effectively marketed and sold, than any drug candidate we may commercialize and may render our drug candidates obsolete or non-competitive before we can recover the expenses of their development and commercialization. We anticipate that we will face intense and increasing competition as new drugs enter the market and advanced technologies become available. Finally, the development of new treatment methods for the diseases we are targeting could render our drug candidates non-competitive or obsolete.

Current and future legislation may increase the difficulty and cost for us and any future collaborators to obtain marketing approval of our other drug candidates and affect the prices we, or they, may obtain.

In the United States and some foreign jurisdictions, there have been a number of legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes regarding the healthcare system that could, among other things, prevent or delay marketing approval of our drug candidates, restrict or regulate post-approval activities and affect our ability, or the ability of any collaborators, to profitably sell any products for which we, or they, obtain marketing approval. We expect that current laws, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in more rigorous coverage criteria and in additional downward pressure on the price that we, or any future collaborators, may receive for any approved products.

The costs of prescription pharmaceuticals in the United States has also been the subject of considerable discussion in the United States, and members of Congress and the Administration have stated that they will address such costs through new legislative and administrative measures. The pricing of prescription pharmaceuticals is also subject to governmental control outside the United States. In these countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost effectiveness of our product candidates to other available therapies. If reimbursement of our products is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, our ability to generate revenues and become profitable could be impaired. In the European Union, similar political,

economic and regulatory developments may affect our ability to profitably commercialize our products. In addition to continuing pressure on prices and cost containment measures, legislative developments at the European Union or member state level may result in significant additional requirements or obstacles that may increase our operating costs.

Moreover, legislative and regulatory proposals have also been made to expand post-approval requirements and restrict sales and promotional activities for pharmaceutical drugs. We cannot be sure whether additional legislative changes will be enacted, or whether the FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations will be changed, or what the impact of such changes on the marketing approvals of our drug candidates, if any, may be. In addition, increased scrutiny by the United States Congress of the FDA's approval process may significantly delay or prevent marketing approval, as well as subject us and any future collaborators to more stringent drug labeling and post-marketing testing and other requirements.

Our current and future relationships with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers (actual and potential) and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere may be subject, directly or indirectly, to applicable healthcare laws and regulations.

Healthcare providers, physicians and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere will play a primary role in the recommendation and prescription of any drug candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. Our current and future arrangements with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers (actual and potential) and third-party payors may expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws, including, without limitation:

- the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act ("FDCA") is the statute that provides the FDA with authority to oversee the safety and approval of pharmaceutical products. The FDCA vests authority with FDA to conduct inspections of sponsors conducting pharmaceutical development, such as vTv, to protect the rights, safety and welfare of clinical trial subjects, ensure the accuracy and reliability of clinical trial data, and verify compliance with FDA regulations. The FDCA sets forth the standards for approval of new and generic drugs, as well as setting forth the prohibition on marketing investigational products that have not been approved by the FDA as safe and effective. The government (FDA and SEC) use the FDCA to ensure that companies do not mislead the medical, patient or investor communities about investigational products prior to their approval. To that end, the FDCA prohibits "off-label promotion" of any investigational or approved product for any uses, doses or populations, except that set forth in the full prescribing information approved by the FDA. While physicians can prescribe a product for any dose, purpose or population in their medical judgment, manufacturers can only market products for their FDA-approved dose, purpose and population. There are significant civil and criminal penalties that attach to violations of the FDCA, including strict liability misdemeanors for responsible corporate officers, even if such officers were not involved in or aware of the underlying wrongdoing;
- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, offering, receiving or providing remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward, or in return for, either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, lease, order or recommendation of, any good, facility, item or service, for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid. A person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it to have committed a violation. In addition, the Affordable Care Act provided that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act;
- federal civil and criminal false claims laws, including the federal False Claims Act, which impose criminal and civil penalties, including civil whistleblower actions, against individuals or entities for, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the federal government, including the Medicare and Medicaid programs, claims for payment that are false or fraudulent or making a false statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government;
- the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act ("FCPA") that prohibits payments to foreign public officials relating to official acts. In addition to its prohibition on bribery of foreign government officials, the Act requires companies to maintain accurate records and have vigorous internal controls. The DOJ and SEC have made FCPA enforcement a high priority. In addition, other anti-corruption laws such as the UK Bribery Act are even broader than the FCPA in that they apply to bribes offered to any person, not just government officials. There are significant criminal and civil penalties and fines that attach to violations of the FCPA;
- the civil monetary penalties statute, which imposes penalties against any person or entity who, among other things, is determined to have presented or caused to be presented a claim to a federal health program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent;

- the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA), which created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, regardless of the payor (e.g., public or private), knowingly and willfully embezzling or stealing from a healthcare benefit program, willfully obstructing a criminal investigation of a healthcare offense and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up by any trick or device a material fact or making any materially false statements in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services relating to healthcare matters. A person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it to have committed a violation;
- HIPAA, as amended by Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (HITECH), and their respective implementing regulations, which impose obligations on covered entities, including healthcare providers, health plans, and healthcare clearinghouses, as well as their respective business associates that create, receive, maintain or transmit individually identifiable health information for or on behalf of a covered entity, with respect to safeguarding the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information;
- the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act and its implementing regulations, which imposed annual reporting requirements for certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biological products and medical supplies for payments and “transfers of value” provided to physicians and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members; and
- analogous state and foreign laws, such as state anti-kickback and false claims laws, which may apply to sales or marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by non-governmental third-party payors, including private insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry’s voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers; state and foreign laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures; and state and foreign laws governing the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not preempted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Efforts to ensure that our future business arrangements with third parties will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations may involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business activities, including our relationships with physician consultants, some of whom may prescribe our product candidates, if approved, in the future, may not comply with current or future statutes, regulations or case law involving applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws or any other governmental regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, including, without limitation, damages, fines, imprisonment, exclusion from participation in government healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, which could significantly harm our business.

If we try to obtain approval to commercialize any products outside the United States, many of the same risks that apply to obtaining approvals in the United States will likely apply to such a process, and even if we obtain approval to commercialize any such products outside of the United States, a variety of risks associated with international operations could materially adversely affect our business.

If we try to obtain approval to commercialize any of our products outside the United States, many of the same risks with respect to obtaining such approvals in the United States will apply to that process. If any of our drug candidates are approved for commercialization outside of the United States, we intend to enter into agreements with third parties to market them on a worldwide basis or in more limited geographical regions. In that event, we expect that we will be subject to additional risks related to entering into international business relationships, including:

- different regulatory requirements for drug approvals;
- reduced protection for intellectual property rights, including trade secret and patent rights;
- existing tariffs, trade barriers and regulatory requirements and expected or unexpected changes;
- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in foreign economies and markets;

- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- foreign taxes, including withholding of payroll taxes;
- foreign currency fluctuations, which could result in increased operating expenses and reduced revenues, and other obligations incident to doing business in another country;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more or less common than in the United States;
- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad;
- business interruptions resulting from geopolitical actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, hurricanes, floods and fires; and
- difficulty in importing and exporting clinical trial materials and study samples.

Risks Relating to Our Dependence on Third Parties

We may not succeed in establishing and maintaining collaborative relationships, which may significantly limit our ability to develop and commercialize our drug candidates successfully, if at all.

We intend to seek collaborative relationships for the development and/or commercialization of our drug candidates, including *TTP399*. Failure to obtain a collaborative relationship for these candidates, particularly in the European Union and for other markets requiring extensive sales efforts, may significantly impair the potential for our drug candidates. We also will need to enter into collaborative relationships to provide funding to support our other research and development programs. The process of establishing and maintaining collaborative relationships is difficult, time-consuming and involves significant uncertainty, including:

- a collaboration partner may shift its priorities and resources away from our drug candidates due to a change in business strategies, or a merger, acquisition, sale or downsizing;
- a collaboration partner may seek to renegotiate or terminate their relationships with us due to unsatisfactory clinical results, manufacturing issues, a change in business strategy, a change of control or other reasons;
- a collaboration partner may cease development in therapeutic areas which are the subject of our strategic collaboration;
- a collaboration partner may not devote sufficient capital or resources towards our drug candidates;
- a collaboration partner may change the success criteria for a drug candidate thereby delaying or ceasing development of such candidate;
- a significant delay in initiation of certain development activities by a collaboration partner will also delay payment of milestones tied to such activities, thereby impacting our ability to fund our own activities;
- a collaboration partner could develop a product that competes, either directly or indirectly, with our drug candidate;
- a collaboration partner with commercialization obligations may not commit sufficient financial or human resources to the marketing, distribution or sale of a product;
- a collaboration partner with manufacturing responsibilities may encounter regulatory, resource or quality issues and be unable to meet demand requirements;
- a partner may exercise a contractual right to terminate a strategic alliance;
- a dispute may arise between us and a partner concerning the research, development or commercialization of a drug candidate resulting in a delay in milestones, royalty payments or termination of an alliance and possibly resulting in costly litigation or arbitration which may divert management attention and resources; and
- a partner may use our products or technology in such a way as to invite litigation from a third party.

Any collaborative partners we enter into agreements with in the future may shift their priorities and resources away from our drug candidates or seek to renegotiate or terminate their relationships with us. If any collaborator fails to fulfill its responsibilities in a timely manner, or at all, our research, clinical development, manufacturing or commercialization efforts related to that collaboration could be delayed or terminated, or it may be necessary for us to assume responsibility for expenses or activities that would otherwise have been the responsibility of our collaborator. If we are unable to establish and

maintain collaborative relationships on acceptable terms or to successfully transition terminated collaborative agreements, we may have to delay or discontinue further development of one or more of our drug candidates, undertake development and commercialization activities at our own expense or find alternative sources of capital.

We rely on third parties to conduct, supervise and monitor certain of our clinical trials, and if those third parties perform in an unsatisfactory manner, it may harm our business.

We rely on CROs and clinical trial sites to ensure the proper and timely conduct of certain of our clinical trials. While we have agreements governing their activities, and continue to monitor their compliance with those agreements as well as federal standards and regulations, we have limited influence over their actual performance. We will control only certain aspects of our CROs' activities. Nevertheless, we will be responsible for ensuring that our clinical trials are conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards and our reliance on the CROs does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities.

We and our CROs are required to comply with the FDA's good clinical practices requirements ("GCPs") for conducting, recording and reporting the results of clinical trials to assure that data and reported results are credible and accurate and that the rights, integrity and confidentiality of clinical trial participants are protected. The FDA enforces these GCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and clinical trial sites. If we or our CROs fail to comply with applicable GCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving any marketing applications. Upon inspection, the FDA may determine that our clinical trials did not comply with GCPs. In addition, our clinical trials conducted by third parties will require a sufficiently large number of test subjects to evaluate the safety and effectiveness of a drug candidate. Accordingly, if our CROs fail to comply with these regulations or fail to recruit a sufficient number of patients, our clinical trials may be delayed or we may be required to repeat such clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

Our CROs are not our employees, and although we monitor their activities related to our trials, we are not able to control whether or not they devote sufficient time and resources to our clinical trials. If our CROs do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations, fail to meet expected deadlines, or if the quality or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols or regulatory requirements, or for any other reasons, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed or terminated, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for, or successfully commercialize our drug candidates. As a result, our financial results and the commercial prospects for such drug candidates would be harmed, our costs could increase, and our ability to generate revenues could be delayed.

We also rely on other third parties to store and distribute drug products for our clinical trials. Any performance failure on the part of our distributors could delay clinical development or marketing approval of our drug candidates or commercialization of our products, if approved, producing additional losses and depriving us of potential product revenue.

We do not have multiple sources of supply for the components used in TTP399 and our other drug candidates. If we were to lose a supplier, it could have a material adverse effect on our ability to complete the development of TTP399 or our other drug candidates. If we obtain regulatory approval for TTP399 or our other drug candidates, we would need to expand the supply of their components in order to commercialize them.

We do not have multiple sources of supply for the components used in our drug candidates. We also do not have long-term supply agreements with any of our suppliers. If for any reason we are unable to obtain drug substance or drug product from the manufacturers we select, we would have to seek to obtain these from other manufacturers. We may not be able to establish additional sources of supply for our drug candidates, or may be unable to do so on acceptable terms. Such suppliers are subject to regulatory requirements, covering manufacturing, testing, quality control and record keeping relating to our drug candidates and subject to ongoing inspections by the regulatory agencies. Failure by any of our suppliers to comply with applicable regulations may result in long delays and interruptions.

The number of suppliers of the raw material components of our drug candidates is limited. In the event it is necessary or desirable to acquire supplies from an alternative supplier, we might not be able to obtain them on commercially reasonable terms, if at all. It could also require significant time and expense to redesign our manufacturing processes to work with another company.

As part of any marketing approval, a manufacturer and its processes are required to be qualified by the FDA prior to commercialization. If supply from the approved supplier is interrupted, there could be a significant disruption in commercial supply. An alternative vendor would need to be qualified through an NDA amendment or supplement which could result in further delay. The FDA or other regulatory agencies outside of the United States may also require additional studies if a new supplier is relied upon for commercial production. Switching vendors may involve substantial costs and is likely to result in a delay in our desired clinical and commercial timelines.

If we are unable to obtain the supplies we need at a reasonable price or on a timely basis, it could have a material adverse effect on our ability to complete the development of our drug candidates or, if we obtain regulatory approval for our drug candidates, to commercialize them.

We intend to rely on third-party manufacturers to produce our drug candidates. If we experience problems with any of these suppliers, the manufacturing of our drug candidates or products could be delayed.

We do not have the capability to manufacture our drug candidates and do not intend to develop that capability. In order to continue to develop our drug candidates, apply for regulatory approvals and ultimately commercialize products, we need to develop, contract for or otherwise arrange for the necessary manufacturing capabilities. The facilities used by our CMOs to manufacture our drug candidates must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after we submit our NDA to the FDA. We do not control the manufacturing process of, and are completely dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with the regulatory requirements, known as cGMPs, for manufacture of both active drug substances and finished drug products. If our CMOs cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the regulatory requirements of the FDA or others, they will not be able to secure and/or maintain regulatory approval for their manufacturing facilities. In addition, although we monitor our suppliers and their compliance with our contractual terms and federal laws and regulations, we do not control the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our drug candidates or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our drug candidates, if approved.

In addition, there are a limited number of manufacturers that operate under the FDA's cGMP regulations capable of manufacturing our drug candidates. As a result, we may have difficulty finding manufacturers for our drug candidates with adequate capacity for our needs. If we are unable to arrange for third-party manufacturing of our drug candidates on a timely basis, or to do so on commercially reasonable terms, we may not be able to complete development of our drug candidates or market them.

Reliance on third-party manufacturers entails risks to which we might not be subject if we manufactured drug candidates ourselves, including:

- the limited number of manufacturers that could produce our drug candidates for us;
- the inability to meet our product specifications and quality requirements consistently;
- inability to access production facilities on a timely basis;
- inability or delay in increasing manufacturing capacity;
- manufacturing and product quality issues related to scale-up of manufacturing;
- costs and validation of new equipment and facilities required for commercial level activity;
- a failure to satisfy the FDA's cGMP requirements and similar foreign standards on a consistent basis;
- the inability to negotiate manufacturing agreements with third parties under commercially reasonable terms;
- termination or nonrenewal of manufacturing agreements with third parties in a manner or at a time that is costly or damaging to us;
- the reliance on a single source of supply which, if unavailable, would delay our ability to complete our clinical trials or to sell any product for which we have received marketing approval;
- the lack of qualified backup suppliers for supplies that are currently purchased from a single source supplier;
- carrier disruptions or increased costs that are beyond our control; and
- the failure to deliver products under specified storage conditions and in a timely manner.

Any of these risks could cause the delay of clinical trials, regulatory submissions, required approvals or commercialization of our products, cause us to incur higher costs and prevent us from commercializing our drug candidates successfully. Manufacturing of our drug candidates and any approved products could be disrupted or halted if our third-party manufacturers do not comply with cGMP or foreign manufacturing standards, even if the compliance failure does not relate to our drug candidates or approved products. Furthermore, if any of our drug candidates are approved and our third-party manufacturers fail to deliver the required commercial quantities of finished product on a timely basis and at commercially reasonable prices and we are unable to find one or more replacement manufacturers capable of production at a substantially

equivalent cost, in substantially equivalent volumes and quality and on a timely basis, we would likely be unable to meet demand for our products and could lose potential revenue. It may take several years to establish an alternative source of supply for our drug candidates and to have any such new source approved by the FDA or a foreign regulator.

Risks Relating to Our Intellectual Property

If we are unable to obtain and maintain sufficient intellectual property protection for our product candidates, or if the scope of the intellectual property protection is not sufficiently broad, our commercial success may be adversely affected.

Our commercial success will depend in part on our ability to:

- apply for, obtain, maintain, and enforce patents;
- protect trade secrets and other confidential and proprietary information; and
- operate without infringing upon the proprietary rights of others.

We will be able to protect our proprietary technology from unauthorized use by third parties only to the extent that such proprietary rights are covered by regulatory exclusivity, valid and enforceable patents or are effectively maintained as trade secrets. Any non-confidential disclosure to or misappropriation by third parties of our confidential or proprietary information could enable competitors to quickly duplicate or surpass our technological achievements, thus eroding our competitive position in our market.

The patent application process, also known as patent prosecution, is expensive and time-consuming, and we and our current or future licensors and licensees may not be able to prepare, file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner. It is also possible that we or our current licensors or licensees, or any future licensors or licensees, will fail to identify patentable aspects of inventions made in the course of development and commercialization activities before it is too late to obtain patent protection on them. Therefore, these and any of our patents and patent applications may not be prosecuted and enforced in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. It is possible that defects of form in the preparation or filing of our patents or patent applications may exist, or may arise in the future, for example with respect to proper priority claims or determination of inventorship. If we or our current licensors or licensees, or any future licensors or licensees, fail to maintain, or protect such patents and other intellectual property rights, such rights may be reduced or eliminated. Moreover, in some circumstances, we may not have the right to control the preparation, filing and prosecution of patent applications, or to maintain the patents, covering technology that we license from or license to third parties. Therefore, such patents and patent applications may not be prosecuted and enforced in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. If our current licensors or licensees, or any future licensors or licensees, are not fully cooperative or disagree with us as to the prosecution, maintenance or enforcement of any patent rights, such patent rights could be compromised. If there are material defects in the form or preparation of our patents or patent applications, such patents or applications may be invalid and unenforceable. Any of these outcomes could impair our ability to prevent competition from third parties, which may harm our business.

The patent applications that we own or license may fail to result in issued patents in the United States or in other countries. Even if patents do issue on such patent applications, third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability, or scope thereof, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated, or held unenforceable. For example, U.S. patents can be challenged by any person before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) Patent Trial and Appeals Board at any time within the one-year period following that person’s receipt of an allegation of infringement of the patents. Patents granted by the European Patent Office may be similarly opposed by any person within nine months from the publication of the grant. Similar proceedings are available in other jurisdictions. In the United States, Europe, and other jurisdictions, third parties can raise questions of validity with a patent office even before a patent has granted. Furthermore, even if they are unchallenged, our patents and patent applications may not adequately protect our intellectual property or prevent others from designing around our claims. If the breadth or strength of protection provided by the patents and patent applications we hold or pursue with respect to our product candidates is successfully challenged, then our ability to commercialize such product candidates could be negatively affected, and we may face unexpected competition that could harm our business. Further, if we encounter delays in our clinical trials, the period of time during which we or our collaborators could market our product candidates under patent protection would be reduced.

The degree of future protection of our proprietary rights is uncertain. Patent protection may be unavailable or severely limited in some cases and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep our competitive advantage. For example:

- we might not have been the first to invent or the first to file the inventions covered by each of our pending patent applications and issued patents;

- others may be able to make, use, sell, offer to sell, or import products that are similar to our products or product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of our patents; others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies or duplicate any of our technologies;
- the proprietary rights of others may have an adverse effect on our business;
- any proprietary rights we do obtain may not encompass commercially viable products, may not provide us with any competitive advantages or may be challenged by third parties;
- any patents we obtain, or our in-licensed issued patents may not be valid or enforceable; or
- we may not develop additional technologies or products that are patentable or suitable to maintain as trade secrets.

If we or our current licensors or licensees, or any future licensors or licensees, fail to prosecute, maintain, and enforce patent protection for our product candidates, our ability to develop and commercialize our product candidates could be harmed and we might not be able to prevent competitors from making, using, and selling competing products. This failure to properly protect the intellectual property rights relating to our product candidates could harm our business, financial condition, and operating results. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods, and know-how.

Even where laws provide protection, costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and the outcome of such litigation would be uncertain. If we or one of our collaborators were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering the product candidate, the defendant could assert an affirmative defense or counterclaim that our patent is not infringed, invalid and/or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States, defendant defenses and counterclaims alleging noninfringement, invalidity and/or unenforceability are commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, including novelty, non-obviousness, definiteness, and enablement. Patents may be unenforceable if someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld material information from the USPTO, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. The outcomes of proceedings involving assertions of invalidity and unenforceability are unpredictable. It is possible that prior art of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution exists, which would render our patents invalid. Moreover, it is also possible that prior art may exist that we are aware of, but that we do not believe are relevant to our current or future patents, that could nevertheless be determined to render our patents invalid. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability of our patents covering one of our product candidates, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on such product candidate. Such a loss of patent protection would harm our business. Moreover, our competitors could counterclaim in any suit to enforce our patents that we infringe their intellectual property. Furthermore, some of our competitors have substantially greater intellectual property portfolios, and resources, than we do.

Our ability to stop third parties from using our technology or making, using, selling, offering to sell, or importing our products is dependent upon the extent to which we have rights under valid and enforceable patents that cover these activities. If any patent we currently or in the future may own or license is deemed not infringed, invalid or unenforceable, it could impact our commercial success. We cannot predict the breadth of claims that may be issued from any patent applications we currently or may in the future own or license from third parties.

To the extent that consultants or key employees apply technological information independently developed by them or by others to our product candidates, disputes may arise as to who has the proprietary rights to such information and product candidates, and certain of such disputes may not be resolved in our favor. Consultants and key employees that work with our confidential and proprietary technologies are required to assign all intellectual property rights in their inventions and discoveries created during the scope of their work to our company. However, these consultants or key employees may terminate their relationship with us, and we cannot preclude them indefinitely from dealing with our competitors.

If we are unable to prevent disclosure of our trade secrets or other confidential information to third parties, our competitive position may be impaired.

We also may rely on trade secrets to protect our technology, especially where we do not believe patent protection is appropriate or obtainable. Our ability to stop third parties from obtaining the information or know-how necessary to make, use, sell, offer to sell, or import our products or practice our technology is dependent in part upon the extent to which we prevent disclosure of the trade secrets that cover these activities. Trade secret rights can be lost through disclosure to third parties. Although we use reasonable efforts to protect our trade secrets, our employees, consultants, contractors, outside scientific collaborators, and other advisors may unintentionally or willfully disclose our trade secrets to third parties, resulting in loss of trade secret protection. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods, and

know-how, which would not constitute a violation of our trade secret rights. Enforcing a claim that a third party is engaged in the unlawful use of our trade secrets is expensive, difficult and time consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, recognition of rights in trade secrets and a willingness to enforce trade secrets differs in certain jurisdictions.

Changes to the patent laws in the United States and other jurisdictions could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products.

As is the case with other pharmaceutical companies, our success is heavily dependent on intellectual property, particularly patents. Obtaining and enforcing patents in the pharmaceutical industry involve both technological and legal complexity and is therefore costly, time consuming and inherently uncertain.

If we are sued for infringing intellectual property rights of third parties, it will be costly and time consuming, and an unfavorable outcome in that litigation could harm our business.

Our commercial success depends significantly on our ability to operate without infringing, violating or misappropriating the patents and other proprietary rights of third parties. Our own technologies may infringe, violate, or misappropriate the patents or other proprietary rights of third parties, or we may be subject to third-party claims of such infringement. Numerous U.S. and foreign issued patents and pending patent applications owned by third parties, exist in the fields in which we are developing our product candidates. Because some patent applications may be maintained in secrecy until the patents are issued, because publication of patent applications is often delayed, and because publications in the scientific literature often lag behind actual discoveries, we cannot be certain that we were the first to invent the technology or that others have not filed patent applications for technology covered by our pending applications. We may not be aware of patents that have already issued that a third party might assert are infringed by our product candidates. It is also possible that patents of which we are aware, but which we do not believe are relevant to our product candidates, could nevertheless be found to be infringed by our product candidates. Moreover, we may face Inter Partes Review (“IPR”) proceedings before the USPTO, or patent infringement claims from non-practicing entities that have no relevant product revenue and against whom our own patent portfolio may thus have no deterrent effect. In the future, we may agree to indemnify our manufacturing partners against certain intellectual property claims brought by third parties.

Intellectual property litigation involves many risks and uncertainties, and there is no assurance that we will prevail in any lawsuit brought against us. Third parties making claims against us for infringement, violation or misappropriation of their intellectual property rights may seek and obtain injunctive or other equitable relief, which could effectively block our ability to further develop and commercialize our product candidates. Further, if a patent infringement suit were brought against us, we could be forced to stop or delay research, development, manufacturing or sales of the product or product candidate that is the subject of the suit. Defense of these claims, regardless of their merit, would cause us to incur substantial expenses and, would be a substantial diversion of resources from our business. In the event of a successful claim of any such infringement, violation, or misappropriation, we may need to obtain licenses from such third parties and we and our partners may be prevented from pursuing product development or commercialization and/or may be required to pay damages. We cannot be certain that any licenses required under such patents or proprietary rights would be made available to us, or that any offer to license would be made available to us on commercially reasonable terms. If we cannot obtain such licenses, we and our collaborators may be restricted or prevented from manufacturing and selling products employing our technology. These adverse results, if they occur, could adversely affect our business, results of operations and prospects, and the value of our shares.

We may become involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our patents or other intellectual property, which could be expensive, time consuming and unsuccessful.

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries have been characterized by extensive litigation regarding patents and other intellectual property rights. The defense and prosecution of contractual or intellectual property lawsuits, USPTO interference or derivation proceedings, European Patent Office oppositions and related legal and administrative proceedings in the United States, Europe, and other countries, involve complex legal and factual questions. As a result, such proceedings may be costly and time-consuming to pursue, and their outcome is uncertain.

Litigation may be necessary to:

- protect and enforce our patents and any future patents issuing on our patent applications;
- enforce or clarify the terms of the licenses we have granted or been granted or may grant or be granted in the future;
- protect and enforce trade secrets, know-how and other proprietary rights that we own or have licensed, or may license in the future; or

- determine the enforceability, scope, and validity of the proprietary rights of third parties and defend against alleged patent infringement.

Competitors may infringe our intellectual property. As a result, we may be required to file infringement claims to stop third-party infringement or unauthorized use. This can be expensive, particularly for a company of our size, and time-consuming. In addition, in an infringement proceeding, a court may decide that a patent of ours is not valid or is unenforceable or may refuse to stop the other party from using the technology at issue on the grounds that our patent claims do not cover its technology or that the factors necessary to grant an injunction against an infringer are not satisfied. An adverse determination of any litigation or other proceedings could put one or more of our patents at risk of being invalidated, interpreted narrowly, or amended such that they do not cover our product candidates. Moreover, such adverse determinations could put our patent applications at risk of not issuing or issuing with limited and potentially inadequate scope to cover our product candidates or to prevent others from marketing similar products.

IPR, interference, derivation or other proceedings brought at the USPTO, may be necessary to determine the priority or patentability of inventions with respect to our patent applications or those of our licensors or potential collaborators. Litigation or USPTO proceedings brought by us may fail or may be invoked against us by third parties. Even if we are successful, domestic or foreign litigation or USPTO or foreign patent office proceedings may result in substantial costs and distraction to our management. We may not be able, alone or with our licensors or potential collaborators, to prevent misappropriation of our proprietary rights, particularly in countries where the laws may not protect such rights as fully as in the United States.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation or other proceedings, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation or other proceedings. In addition, during the course of this kind of litigation or proceedings, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments or public access to related documents. If investors perceive these results to be negative, the market price for our common stock could be significantly harmed.

Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of patent-related disputes, including patent litigation, more effectively than we can because they have substantially greater resources. In addition, any uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of any litigation could have a material adverse effect on our ability to raise the funds necessary to continue our operations.

We may not be able to enforce all of our intellectual property rights throughout the world.

Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on our product candidates in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive. The requirements for patentability may differ in certain countries, particularly in developing countries. Moreover, our ability to protect and enforce our intellectual property rights may be adversely affected by unforeseen changes in foreign intellectual property laws. Additionally, laws of some countries outside of the United States do not afford intellectual property protection to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in certain foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of some countries, particularly developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents and other intellectual property rights. This could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or the misappropriation of our other intellectual property rights. For example, many foreign countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner must grant licenses to third parties. Consequently, we may not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in all countries outside the United States. Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, if our ability to enforce our patents to stop infringing activities is inadequate. These products may compete with our products, and our patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing.

No earlier than October 1, 2022, European applications will soon have the option, upon grant of a patent, of becoming a Unitary Patent which will be subject to the jurisdiction of the Unitary Patent Court (“UPC”). This will be a significant change in European patent practice. As the UPC is a new court system, there is no precedent for the court, increasing the uncertainty of any litigation.

Geo-political actions in the United States and in foreign countries could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution or maintenance of our patent applications or those of any current or future licensors and the maintenance, enforcement or defense of our issued patents or those of any current or future licensors. For example, the United States and foreign government actions related to Russia’s invasion of Ukraine may limit or prevent filing, prosecution and maintenance of patent applications in Russia. Government actions may also prevent maintenance of issued patents in

Russia. These actions could result in abandonment or lapse of our patents or patent applications, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in Russia. If such an event were to occur, it could have a material adverse effect on our business. In addition, a decree was adopted by the Russian government in March 2022, allowing Russian companies and individuals to exploit inventions owned by patentees from the United States without consent or compensation. Consequently, we would not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in Russia or from selling or importing products made using our inventions in and into Russia. Accordingly, our competitive position may be impaired, and our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may be adversely affected.

Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions, whether or not successful, could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and resources from other aspects of our business. Furthermore, while we intend to protect our intellectual property rights in major markets for our products, we cannot ensure that we will be able to initiate or maintain similar efforts in all jurisdictions in which we may wish to market our products. Accordingly, our efforts to protect our intellectual property rights in such countries may be inadequate.

If we do not obtain patent term extensions for our drug candidates, the length of our patent exclusivity will be shorter which may harm our business materially.

Depending upon the timing, duration, and specifics of any FDA marketing approval of our drug candidates, one or more of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term extension under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984 (“Hatch-Waxman Act”). The Hatch-Waxman Act permits a patent extension term of up to five years as compensation for patent term lost during the FDA regulatory review process. A patent term extension cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval, only one patent applicable to each regulatory review period may be granted an extension, and only those claims covering the approved drug, a method for using it or a method for manufacturing it may be extended. However, we may not be granted an extension because of, for example, failing to exercise due diligence during the testing phase or regulatory review process, failing to apply within applicable deadlines, failing to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise failing to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the applicable time period or the scope of patent protection afforded could be less than we request. If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or the term of any such extension is less than we request, our competitors may obtain approval of competing products following the original expiration dates of our patents, and our business may be materially harmed.

Risks Relating to Employee Matters and Managing Growth

We may need to expand our operations and increase the size of our company, and we may experience difficulties in managing growth.

As we advance our drug candidates through preclinical studies and clinical trials and develop new drug candidates, we may need to increase our product development, scientific and administrative headcount to manage these programs. If we commercialize our products, we may need to expand our staff further, particularly in sales and marketing. See “—Risks Relating to the Development, Regulatory Approval, and Commercialization of Our Drug Candidates.” We do not presently have the capability to sell, distribute and market our drug candidates. If we are unable to establish an effective sales force and marketing infrastructure, or enter into acceptable third-party sales and marketing or licensing arrangements, we may not be able to commercialize our drug candidates successfully. In addition, to meet our obligations as a public company, we will need to increase our general and administrative capabilities. Our management, personnel and systems currently in place may not be adequate to support this future growth. Our need to effectively manage our operations, growth and various projects requires that we:

- successfully attract and recruit new employees with the expertise and experience we will require;
- manage our clinical programs effectively, which we anticipate being conducted at numerous clinical sites;
- develop a marketing, distribution and sales infrastructure if we seek to market our products directly, or successfully partner with a third-party organization that will oversee those efforts; and
- continue to improve our operational, manufacturing, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures.

If we are unable to successfully manage this growth and increased complexity of operations, our business may be adversely affected.

We may not be able to manage our business effectively if we are unable to attract and retain key personnel.

We may not be able to attract or retain qualified management, finance, scientific and clinical personnel in the future due to the intense competition for qualified personnel among biotechnology, pharmaceutical and other businesses. If we are not able to attract and retain necessary personnel to accomplish our business objectives, we may experience constraints that will significantly impede the achievement of our development objectives, our ability to raise additional capital and our ability to implement our business strategy.

Our industry has experienced a high rate of turnover of management personnel in recent years. We are highly dependent on the development, regulatory, commercialization and business development expertise of our executive officers and key employees. If we lose one or more of our executive officers or key personnel, our ability to implement our business strategy successfully could be seriously harmed. Any of our executive officers or key employees may terminate their employment at any time. Replacing executive officers and key employees may be difficult, will be costly and may take an extended period of time because of the limited number of individuals in our industry with the mix of skills and experience required to develop, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize products successfully. Competition to hire from this limited pool is intense, and we may be unable to hire, train, retain or motivate these additional key personnel. Our failure to attract and retain key personnel could materially harm our business.

Our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, consultants and collaborators may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with legal, compliance or regulatory standards and requirements.

We are exposed to the risk that our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, consultants and collaborators may engage in fraudulent conduct or other illegal activity. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless and/or negligent conduct or unauthorized activities that violate the regulations of the FDA and non-U.S. regulators, including those laws requiring the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to the FDA and non-U.S. regulators, healthcare fraud and abuse laws and regulations in the United States and abroad, or laws that require the reporting of true and accurate financial information and data. In particular, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing, pre-market promotion, and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. These activities also include the improper use or disclosure of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and cause serious harm to our reputation. We have adopted new comprehensive compliance policies, and revised our code of conduct, but it is not always possible to identify and deter employee or non-employee misconduct, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with these laws or regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations.

Other Risks Relating to Our Business

The widespread outbreak of an illness or any other communicable disease, or any other public health crisis, could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We could be negatively affected by the widespread outbreak of an illness or any other communicable disease, or any other public health crisis that results in economic and trade disruptions, including the disruption of global supply chains.

Due to the various restrictions put into effect by governments around the world, including the United States and Canada, health professionals may reduce staffing and reduce or postpone meetings with clients in response to the spread of an infectious disease. Such events may result in a period of business disruption, and in reduced operations, any of which could materially affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Quarantines, stay-at-home orders and other limitations can disrupt our research and administrative functions, regardless of whether we are actually forced to close our own facilities. Similar disruptions may also affect other organizations and persons that we collaborate with or whose services we are dependent on. The need for our employees and business partners to work remotely also creates greater potential for risks related to cybersecurity, confidentiality and data privacy.

An outbreak could also potentially affect the operations of the FDA, EMA or other health authorities, which could result in delays in meetings related to planned clinical trials. Further, it may also slow potential enrollment of our ongoing clinical trials. The COVID-19 outbreak and mitigation measures also have had, and may continue to have, an adverse impact on global economic conditions which could have an adverse effect on our business and financial condition, including impairing our ability to raise capital when needed.

We may use our financial and human resources to pursue a particular research program or drug candidate and fail to capitalize on programs or drug candidates that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.

Because we have limited financial and human resources, we have here to date focused primarily on the regulatory approval of *TTP399*. As a result, we may have foregone or delayed the pursuit of opportunities with other drug candidates or for other indications that could later prove to have had greater commercial potential. Our future resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on existing and future drug candidates for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular drug candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that drug candidate through strategic alliance, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights to such drug candidate, or we may allocate internal resources to a drug candidate in a therapeutic area in which it would have been more advantageous to enter into a partnering arrangement.

We may be subject to litigation or government investigations for a variety of claims, which could adversely affect our operating results, harm our reputation or otherwise negatively impact our business.

We may be subject to litigation or government investigations. The outcome of any litigation or government investigation, regardless of its merits, is inherently uncertain. Any lawsuits or government investigations, and the disposition of such lawsuits and government investigations, could be time-consuming and expensive to resolve and divert management attention and resources. Any adverse determination related to litigation or government investigations could adversely affect our financial performance, harm our reputation or otherwise negatively impact our business. In addition, depending on the nature and timing of any such dispute, a resolution of a legal matter or government investigation could materially affect our future operating results, our cash flows or both.

If product liability lawsuits are brought against us, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit commercialization of any future products we develop.

We face an inherent risk of product liability as a result of the clinical testing of our drug candidates and will face an even greater risk if we commercialize any products. For example, we may be sued if any product we develop allegedly causes injury or is found to be otherwise unsuitable during product testing, manufacturing, marketing or sale. Any such product liability claims may include allegations of defects in manufacturing, defects in design, a failure to warn of dangers inherent in the product, negligence, strict liability and a breach of warranties. Claims could also be asserted under state consumer protection acts. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against product liability claims, we may incur substantial liabilities or be required to limit commercialization of our products. Even a successful defense would require significant financial and management resources. Regardless of the merits or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for any drug candidates or products we develop;
- injury to our reputation and significant negative media attention;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants or delay or cancellation of clinical trials;
- costs to defend the related litigation;
- a diversion of management's time and our resources;
- substantial monetary awards to trial participants or patients;
- regulatory investigations, product recalls, withdrawals or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- loss of revenue;
- the inability or delay in our ability to commercialize any products we develop; and
- a decline in our share price.

Our inability to obtain and maintain sufficient product liability insurance at an acceptable cost and scope of coverage to protect against potential product liability claims could prevent or inhibit the commercialization of any products we develop. We currently carry clinical trial liability insurance in the amount of \$10.0 million in the aggregate. Although we maintain such insurance, any claim that may be brought against us could result in a court judgment or settlement in an amount that is not covered, in whole or in part, by our insurance or that is in excess of the limits of our insurance coverage. Our insurance policies also have various exclusions and deductibles, and we may be subject to a product liability claim for which we have no coverage. We will have to pay any amounts awarded by a court or negotiated in a settlement that exceed our coverage limitations or that are not covered by our insurance, and we may not have, or be able to obtain, sufficient capital to pay such amounts. Moreover, in the future, we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses. If and when we obtain approval for marketing for any drug product, we intend to expand our insurance coverage to include the sale of that product, however, we may be unable to obtain this liability insurance on commercially reasonable terms.

Our insurance policies are expensive and protect us only from some business risks, which will leave us exposed to significant uninsured liabilities.

We do not carry insurance for all categories of risk that our business may encounter. Some of the policies we currently maintain include general liability, employment practices liability, property, auto, workers' compensation, umbrella, clinical trial and directors' and officers' insurance. We do not know, however, if we will be able to maintain existing insurance with adequate levels of coverage. Any significant uninsured liability may require us to pay substantial amounts, which would adversely affect our cash position and results of operations.

The market for our proposed products is rapidly changing and competitive, and new drugs and new treatments that may be developed by others could impair our ability to maintain and grow our businesses and remain competitive.

The pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries are subject to rapid and substantial technological change. Developments by others may render proposed products noncompetitive or obsolete, or we may be unable to keep pace with technological developments or other market factors. Technological competition from pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, universities, governmental entities and others diversifying into the field is intense and is expected to increase.

As a company with nominal revenues engaged in the development of drug technologies, our resources are limited, and we may experience technical challenges inherent in such technologies. Competitors have developed or are in the process of developing technologies that are, or in the future may be, the basis for competition. Some of these technologies may have an entirely different approach or means of accomplishing similar therapeutic effects compared to our proposed products. Our competitors may develop drugs that are safer, more effective or less costly than our proposed products and, therefore, present a serious competitive threat to us.

The potential widespread acceptance of therapies that are alternatives to ours may limit market acceptance of our drug candidates, even if commercialized. Some of our targeted diseases and conditions can also be treated by other medication. These treatments may be widely accepted in medical communities and have a longer history of use or be offered at a more competitive price. The established use of these competitive drugs may limit the potential for our technologies, formulations and products to receive widespread acceptance if commercialized.

Therefore, changes in the market for our products and the availability of new or alternative treatments could have a material adverse effect on our businesses, financial conditions and results of operations.

Our business and operations would suffer in the event of computer system failures, cyber-attacks or a deficiency in our cyber-security.

Despite the implementation of security measures, our internal computer systems, and those of third parties on which we rely, are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, malware, natural disasters, terrorism, war, telecommunication and electrical failures, cyber-attacks or cyber-intrusions over the Internet, attachments to emails, persons inside our organization or persons with access to systems inside our organization. The risk of a security breach or disruption, particularly through cyber-attacks or cyber-intrusion, including by computer hackers, foreign governments and cyber terrorists, has generally increased as the number, intensity and sophistication of attempted attacks and intrusions from around the world have increased. If such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our drug development programs. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or ongoing or planned clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. Also, confidential patient and other information may be compromised in a cyber-attack or cyber-intrusion. To the extent that any disruption or security breach was to result in a loss of or damage to our data or applications, or inappropriate

disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur material legal claims and liability, damage to our reputation, and the further development of our drug candidates could be delayed.

Risks Related to our Common Stock

If we are unable to maintain listing of our Class A common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market or another national stock exchange, it may be more difficult for our stockholders to sell their Class A common stock.

Nasdaq requires issuers to comply with certain standards in order to remain listed on its exchange. We have received a delisting notice from Nasdaq as result of the closing bid price of our Class A common stock being below \$1.00 per share for 30 consecutive business days. Our Class A common stock may be involuntarily delisted from Nasdaq if we fail to regain compliance with the minimum closing bid price requirement of \$1.00 per share.

If we are unable to maintain our listing on Nasdaq, it may become more difficult for our stockholders to sell our Class A common stock in the public market, and the price of our Class A common stock may be adversely affected due to the likelihood of decreased liquidity resulting from delisting. In addition, it may inhibit or preclude our ability to raise additional financing.

Affiliates of MacAndrews & Forbes Incorporated (together with its affiliates “MacAndrews”) has substantial influence over our business, and their interests may differ from our interests or those of our other stockholders.

MacAndrews holds, directly or indirectly, a majority of our combined voting power. Due to its ownership and rights under our investor rights agreement, amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws, MacAndrews has the power to control us and our subsidiaries, including the power to:

- nominate a majority of our directors, elect a majority of our directors and appoint our executive officers, set our management policies and exercise overall control over our company and subsidiaries;
- determine the composition of the committees on our Board of Directors;
- agree to sell or otherwise transfer a controlling stake in our company; and
- determine the outcome of substantially all actions requiring stockholder approval, including transactions with related parties, corporate reorganizations, acquisitions and dispositions of assets and dividends.

The interests of MacAndrews may differ from our interests or those of our other stockholders and the concentration of control in MacAndrews will limit other stockholders’ ability to influence corporate matters. The concentration of ownership and voting power with MacAndrews may also delay, defer or even prevent an acquisition by a third party or other change of control of our company and may make some transactions more difficult or impossible without the support of MacAndrews, even if such events are in the best interests of our other stockholders. The concentration of voting power with MacAndrews may have an adverse effect on the price of our Class A common stock. Our company may take actions that our other stockholders do not view as beneficial, which may adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition and cause the value of our Class A common stock to decline.

Our directors who have relationships with MacAndrews may have conflicts of interest with respect to matters involving our company.

One of our directors is affiliated with MacAndrews. This director will have fiduciary duties to us and in addition will have duties to MacAndrews. In addition, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that none of MacAndrews, any of our non-employee directors who are employees, affiliates or consultants of MacAndrews or its affiliates (other than us or our subsidiaries) or any of their respective affiliates will be liable to us or our stockholders for breach of any fiduciary duty by reason of the fact that any such individual directs a corporate opportunity to MacAndrews or its affiliates instead of us, or does not communicate information regarding a corporate opportunity to us that such person or affiliate has directed to MacAndrews or its affiliates. As a result, such circumstances may entail real or apparent conflicts of interest with respect to matters affecting both us and MacAndrews, whose interests, in some circumstances, may be adverse to ours. In addition, as a result of MacAndrews’ indirect ownership interest, conflicts of interest could arise with respect to transactions involving business dealings between us and MacAndrews or their affiliates, including potential business transactions, potential acquisitions of businesses or properties, the issuance of additional securities, the payment of dividends by us and other matters.

We do not anticipate paying cash dividends on our Class A common stock, and accordingly, stockholders must rely on stock appreciation for any return on their investment.

We have never declared or paid any cash dividend on our Class A common stock and do not anticipate paying cash dividends on our Class A common stock in the future. As a result, the only return to stockholders will be appreciation in the price of our Class A common stock, which may never occur. Investors seeking cash dividends should not invest in our Class A common stock.

Our share price may be volatile, which could subject us to securities class action litigation and result in substantial losses for our stockholders.

The market price of shares of our Class A common stock could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to many risk factors listed in this section, and others beyond our control, including:

- results and timing of our clinical trials and receipt of data from the trials;
- the availability of cash or financing to continue our clinical trials and other operations;
- results of clinical trials of our competitors' products;
- failure or discontinuation of any of our research programs;
- delays in the development or commercialization of our potential products;
- regulatory actions with respect to our products or our competitors' products;
- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our financial condition and operating results;
- actual or anticipated changes in our growth rate relative to our competitors;
- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our competitors' operating results or changes in their growth rate;
- competition from existing products or new products that may emerge;
- announcements by us or our competitors of significant acquisitions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures, collaborations or capital commitments;
- issuance of new or updated research or reports by securities analysts;
- fluctuations in the valuation of companies perceived by investors to be comparable to us;
- share price and volume fluctuations attributable to inconsistent trading volume levels of our shares;
- additions or departures of key management or scientific personnel;
- disputes or other developments related to proprietary rights, including patents, litigation matters and our ability to obtain, maintain, defend or enforce proprietary rights relating to our products and technologies;
- announcement or expectation of additional financing efforts;
- sales of our Class A common stock by us, our insiders or our other stockholders;
- issues in manufacturing our potential products;
- market acceptance of our potential products;
- market conditions for biopharmaceutical stocks in general; and
- general economic and market conditions.

Furthermore, the stock markets have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have affected and continue to affect the market prices of equity securities of many companies. These fluctuations often have been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of those companies. These broad market and industry fluctuations, as well as general economic, political and market conditions such as recessions, interest rate changes or international currency fluctuations, may negatively impact the market price of shares of our Class A common stock. In addition, such fluctuations could subject us to securities class action litigation, which could result in substantial costs and divert our management's attention from other business concerns, which could potentially harm our business. As a result of this volatility, our stockholders may not be able to sell their common stock at or above the price at which they purchased their shares.

The trading market for our Class A common stock will be influenced by the research and reports that equity research analysts publish about us and our business.

The price of our stock could decline if one or more equity research analysts downgrade our stock or issue other unfavorable commentary or research. If one or more equity research analysts ceases coverage of our company or fails to publish reports on us regularly, demand for our stock could decrease, which in turn could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

A substantial portion of our total outstanding shares may be sold into the market at any time. This could cause the market price of our Class A common stock to drop significantly, even if our business is doing well.

The market price of our Class A common stock could decline as a result of sales of a large number of shares of our Class A common stock or the perception that such sales could occur. These sales, or the possibility that these sales may occur, also might make it more difficult for us to sell equity securities in the future at a time and price that we deem appropriate.

As of December 31, 2022, MacAndrews and its affiliates hold 23,084,267 non-voting common units of vTv LLC (“vTv Units”) and the same number of shares of vTv Therapeutics Inc. Class B common stock as well as an aggregate of 36,519,212 shares of our Class A common stock. As a result, MacAndrews and its affiliates hold shares representing approximately 57.0% of the combined voting power of our outstanding common stock. Pursuant to the terms of the Exchange Agreement among the Company, vTv LLC and the holders of vTv Units party thereto (the “Exchange Agreement”), vTv Units (along with the corresponding number of shares of our Class B common stock) will be exchangeable for (i) shares of our Class A common stock on a one-for-one basis or (ii) cash (based on the market price of the shares of Class A common stock), at our option (as the managing member of vTv Therapeutics LLC). Shares of our Class A common stock issuable upon an exchange of vTv Units as described above would be considered “restricted securities,” as that term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act, unless the exchange is registered under the Securities Act.

On August 13, 2015, we filed a registration statement under the Securities Act registering 3,250,000 shares of our Class A common stock reserved for issuance under our 2015 Plan. On August 3, 2020, we filed a registration statement under the Securities Act to register a further 3,750,000 shares of our Class A common stock reserved for issuance under our 2015 Plan, as amended.

We also have issued warrants to purchase 1,823,917 shares of our Class A common stock to MacAndrews. Further, as part of our Loan Agreement, we issued warrants to purchase 190,586 shares of our Class A common stock to our lenders.

Further, we have entered into an investor rights agreement with an affiliate of MacAndrews providing certain governance and registration rights. Pursuant to the investor rights agreement, we filed a shelf registration statement on Form S-3 in June 2019 to register certain shares previously issued to MacAndrews.

Future sales and issuances of our Class A common stock or rights to purchase Class A common stock, including pursuant to our equity incentive plans or the exercise of outstanding warrants, could result in additional dilution of the percentage ownership of our stockholders and could cause our stock price to fall.

We expect that significant additional capital will be needed in the future to continue our planned operations. To the extent we raise additional capital by issuing equity securities, our stockholders may experience substantial dilution. We may sell Class A common stock, convertible securities or other equity securities, including under the LPC Purchase Agreement, the ATM Offering, or pursuant to warrants issued to M&F Group and our previous lenders, and such sales could result in substantial dilution to existing investors.

We incur significant costs and devote substantial management time as a result of operating as a public company and additional resources would be required if we lose our “smaller reporting company” and “non-accelerated filer” status.

As a public company, we operate in an increasingly demanding regulatory environment, which requires us to comply with applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and the related rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission, expanded disclosure requirements, accelerated reporting requirements and more complex accounting rules. Company responsibilities required by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act include establishing corporate oversight and adequate internal control over financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures. Effective internal controls are necessary for us to produce reliable financial reports and are important to help prevent financial fraud.

However, we are currently a “smaller reporting company” and “non-accelerated filer” under the current SEC rules. As such we take advantage of exemptions from certain reporting requirements including exemption from compliance with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes Oxley Act and reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements. Should we lose these statuses, we may no longer be

exempt from these requirements and expect that compliance with the requirements will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time consuming and costly. In addition, our management and other personnel will need to divert attention from operational and other business matters to devote substantial time to these public company requirements. In particular, we expect to incur significant expenses and devote substantial management effort toward ensuring compliance with the requirements of Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. In that regard, we currently do not have an internal audit function. We will continue to qualify as a smaller reporting company as long as 1) our public float is less than \$250 million, or 2) we have less than \$100 million in annual revenues and public float of less than \$700 million. We cannot predict if investors will find our Class A common stock less attractive if we choose to rely on these exemptions.

However, for as long as we remain a “smaller reporting company” and “non-accelerated filer”, we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that do not qualify under these categories including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We intend to take advantage of these reporting exemptions as long as we remain eligible to do so under the related rules.

We are exempt from certain corporate governance requirements since we are a “controlled company” within the meaning of the NASDAQ rules, and as a result our stockholders will not have the protections afforded by these corporate governance requirements.

MacAndrews controls more than 50% of our combined voting power. As a result, we are considered a “controlled company” for the purposes of NASDAQ rules and corporate governance standards, and therefore are permitted to elect not to comply with certain NASDAQ corporate governance requirements, including those that would otherwise require our Board of Directors to have a majority of independent directors and require that we either establish compensation and nominating and corporate governance committees, each comprised entirely of independent directors, or otherwise ensure that the compensation of our executive officers and nominees for directors are determined or recommended to the Board of Directors by the independent members of the Board of Directors. Accordingly, holders of our Class A common stock do not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the NASDAQ rules and corporate governance standards, and the ability of our independent directors to influence our business policies and affairs may be reduced.

Provisions in our charter and bylaws and provisions of Delaware law may delay or prevent our acquisition by a third party, which might diminish the value of our common stock.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws contain several provisions that may make it more difficult or expensive for a third party to acquire control of us without the approval of the Board of Directors. These provisions also may delay, prevent or deter a merger, acquisition, tender offer, proxy contest or other transaction that might otherwise result in our stockholders receiving a premium over the market price for their common stock. The provisions include, among others:

- a prohibition on actions by written consent of the stockholders;
- authorized but unissued shares of common stock and preferred stock that will be available for future issuance;
- the ability of our Board of Directors to increase the size of the Board of Directors and fill vacancies without a stockholder vote;
- provisions that have the same effect as a modified version of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, an anti-takeover law (as further described below); and
- advance notice requirements for stockholder proposals and director nominations.

Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law may affect the ability of an “interested stockholder” to engage in certain business combinations, including mergers, consolidations or acquisitions of additional shares, for a period of three years following the time that the stockholder becomes an “interested stockholder.” An “interested stockholder” is defined to include persons owning directly or indirectly 15% or more of the outstanding voting stock of a corporation. We have elected in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation not to be subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. Nevertheless, the amended and restated certificate of incorporation contains provisions that have the same effect as Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, except that they provide that MacAndrews and its various successors

and affiliates (and transferees of any of them) will not be deemed to be “interested stockholders,” regardless of the percentage of our stock owned by them, and accordingly will not be subject to such restrictions.

The provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws, the significant common stock ownership of MacAndrews and the ability of the Board of Directors to create and issue a new series of preferred stock or implement a stockholder rights plan could discourage potential takeover attempts and reduce the price that investors might be willing to pay for shares of our common stock in the future, which could reduce the market price of our common stock.

We will be required to pay M&F TTP Holdings Two LLC (“M&F”) for certain tax benefits we may claim. In certain circumstances, payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement may be accelerated and/or significantly exceed the actual tax benefits we realize.

The only asset of the Company is its interest in vTv LLC. Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv Units, may be exchanged for shares of our Class A common stock, or for cash, at our option (as the managing member of vTv LLC). These exchanges of Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv LLC Units, may result in increases in the tax basis of the assets of vTv LLC that otherwise would not have been available. Such increases in tax basis are likely to increase (for tax purposes) depreciation and amortization deductions and therefore reduce the amount of income tax we would otherwise be required to pay in the future and may also decrease gain (or increase loss) on future dispositions of certain assets to the extent the increased tax basis is allocated to those assets. The IRS may challenge all or part of these tax basis increases and a court could sustain such a challenge.

We have entered into a Tax Receivable Agreement with vTv Therapeutics Holdings (an entity which was dissolved in October 2015, but to which M&F became a successor) that will provide for the payment by us to M&F (or certain of its transferees or other assignees) of 85% of the amount of cash savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state and local income tax or franchise tax that we actually realize (or, in some circumstances, we are deemed to realize) as a result of (a) the exchange of Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv Units, for shares of our Class A common stock (or for cash), (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by us as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement and (c) certain tax benefits attributable to payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement. Although the actual increase in tax basis and the amount and timing of any payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement will vary depending upon a number of factors, including the timing of exchanges, the price of shares of our Class A common stock at the time of the exchange, the nature of the assets, the extent to which such exchanges are taxable, the tax rates then applicable, and the amount and timing of our income, we expect that the payments that we may make to M&F could be substantial.

M&F generally will not reimburse us for any payments that may previously have been made under the Tax Receivable Agreement even if the IRS subsequently disallows the tax basis increase or any other relevant tax item. Instead, any excess cash payments made by us to M&F will be netted against any future cash payments that we might otherwise be required to make under the terms of the Tax Receivable Agreement. However, we might not determine that we have effectively made an excess cash payment to M&F for a number of years following the initial time of such payment. As a result, in certain circumstances we could make payments to M&F under the Tax Receivable Agreement in excess of our cash tax savings. Our ability to achieve benefits from any tax basis increase and the payments to be made under the Tax Receivable Agreement, will depend upon a number of factors, including the timing and amount of our future income and the nature of our assets.

To the extent that we are unable to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement for any reason, such payments will be deferred and will accrue interest until paid. In addition, the Tax Receivable Agreement provides that, upon a merger, asset sale or other form of business combination or certain other changes of control or if, at any time, we elect an early termination of the Tax Receivable Agreement, our (or our successor’s) obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement with respect to exchanged or acquired Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv Units (whether exchanged or acquired before or after such change of control or early termination), would be required to be paid significantly in advance of the actual realization, if any, of any future tax benefits and would be based on certain assumptions, including that we would have sufficient taxable income to fully utilize the deductions arising from the increased tax deductions and tax basis and other benefits related to entering into the Tax Receivable Agreement, and, in the case of certain early termination elections, that any Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv Units, that have not been exchanged will be deemed exchanged for the market value of the Class A common stock at the time of termination. Consequently, it is possible that the actual cash tax savings realized by us may be significantly less than the corresponding Tax Receivable Agreement payments.

The only asset of the Company is its interest in vTv LLC, and accordingly it will depend on distributions from vTv LLC to pay taxes and expenses, including payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement. vTv LLC's ability to make such distributions may be subject to various limitations and restrictions.

The Company is a holding company, has no material assets other than its ownership of vTv Units and has no independent means of generating revenue or cash flow. vTv LLC is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes and, as such, is not subject to any entity-level U.S. federal income tax. Instead, taxable income will be allocated to holders of its common units, including us. As a result, we will incur U.S. federal, state and local income taxes on our allocable share of any net taxable income of vTv LLC. Under the terms of vTv LLC's Amended and Restated LLC Agreement, vTv LLC will be obligated to make tax distributions to holders of its common units, including us. In addition to tax expenses, we will also incur expenses related to our operations, including expenses under the Tax Receivable Agreement, which could be significant. We intend, as its managing member, to cause vTv LLC to make distributions in an amount sufficient to allow us to pay our taxes and operating expenses, including any payments due under the Tax Receivable Agreement. However, vTv LLC's ability to make such distributions may be subject to various limitations and restrictions including, but not limited to, restrictions on distributions that would either violate any contract or agreement to which vTv LLC is then a party, including the Loan Agreement or any other potential debt agreements, or any applicable law, or that would have the effect of rendering vTv LLC insolvent. If vTv LLC does not distribute sufficient funds for us to pay our taxes or other liabilities, we may have to borrow funds, which could adversely affect our liquidity and subject us to various restrictions imposed by any such lenders. To the extent that we are unable to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement for any reason, such payments will be deferred and will accrue interest until paid.

Our organizational structure confers certain benefits upon M&F and certain of its successors and assigns that will not benefit Class A common stockholders to the same extent as it will benefit M&F.

Our organizational structure, including the fact that M&F owns more than 50% of the voting power of our outstanding voting stock and owns part of its economic interest in our business through vTv LLC, confers certain benefits upon M&F that will not benefit the holders of our Class A common stock to the same extent as it will benefit M&F. For example, the Tax Receivable Agreement will provide for the payment by us to M&F (or certain of its transferees or other assignees) of 85% of the amount of cash savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state and local income tax or franchise tax that we actually realize (or, in some circumstances, we are deemed to realize) as a result of (a) the exchange of Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv Units, for shares of our Class A common stock (or for cash), (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by us as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement and (c) certain tax benefits attributable to payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement. Although we will retain 15% of the amount of such tax benefits, it is possible that the interests of M&F may in some circumstances conflict with our interests and the interests of our other stockholders. For example, M&F may have different tax positions from us, especially in light of the Tax Receivable Agreement, that could influence their decisions regarding whether and when we should dispose of assets, whether and when we should incur new or refinance existing indebtedness, and whether and when we should terminate the Tax Receivable Agreement and accelerate our obligations thereunder. In addition, the determination of future tax reporting positions, the structuring of future transactions and the handling of any future challenges by any taxing authority to our tax reporting positions may take into consideration M&F's tax or other considerations, which may differ from the considerations of us or our other stockholders. To the extent that M&F is dissolved or liquidated, MacAndrews and/or its affiliates will succeed to the rights and obligations of M&F under the Tax Receivable Agreement, and the same considerations described above apply to any such successor parties.

ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

Our corporate headquarters is located in High Point, North Carolina, where we lease 8,682 square feet of office space in the Premier Center office park. The term of the lease for this space continues through November 2025.

ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

We are not currently a party to any material legal proceedings.

ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

None.

PART II**ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT’S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES****Market Information**

Our Class A common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol “VTVT”.

Dividend Policy

No cash dividends have ever been declared or paid on the common equity to date by the Company.

Holder

As of March 6, 2023, there were approximately 24 holders of record of our Class A common stock and 6 holders of record of our Class B common stock. Because almost all of the shares of our Class A common stock are held by brokers, nominees and other institutions on behalf of shareholders, we are unable to estimate the total number of shareholders represented by these record holders.

Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans

The following table summarizes information about our equity compensation plans as of December 31, 2022. The only awards that have been granted under the plan below are in the form of option and restricted stock unit awards related to our Class A common stock:

Plan Category	Number of Securities to be Issued Upon Exercise of Outstanding Options, Warrants and Rights (a)	Weighted average Exercise Price of Outstanding Options, Warrants and Rights (b)	Number of Securities Remaining Available for Future Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a)) (c)
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders			
2015 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan	5,519,285	\$2.81	1,424,882
Inducement Awards	2,824,659	\$0.94	—
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders			—
Total	<u>8,343,944</u>		<u>1,424,882</u>

Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

There have been no repurchases of the Company’s common stock during the fourth fiscal quarter of fiscal 2022.

ITEM 6. RESERVED

ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following discussion and analysis should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. This discussion and analysis contains forward-looking statements based upon current beliefs, plans and expectations that involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions, such as statements regarding our plans, objectives, expectations, intentions and projections. Our actual results and the timing of selected events could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of several factors, including those set forth in Part I, Item 1A, “Risk Factors” in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. See the sections entitled “Risk Factors” and “Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.”

Company Overview

We are a clinical stage pharmaceutical company focused on treating metabolic and inflammatory diseases to minimize their long- term complications and improve the lives of patients. We have an innovative pipeline of first-in-class small molecule clinical and pre-clinical drug candidates. Our lead program is *TTP399*, an orally administered, small molecule, liver-selective glucokinase activator (“GKA”) as an adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of type 1 diabetes (“T1D”).

Recent Developments

On July 27, 2022, the Company appointed Paul Sekhri as President and Chief Executive Officer (CEO) effective August 1, 2022, and Mr. Sekhri was confirmed as a member of the board of directors on August 9, 2022. Mr. Sekhri brings nearly 30 years of healthcare experience, including serving as President and CEO of several healthcare companies, experience in several senior business development and strategy roles and he has been a director on more than 30 private, public company and non-profit boards.

On December 13, 2022, the Company announced the appointment of Steven Tuch as Chief Financial Officer effective December 8, 2022. Mr. Tuch brings more than 20 years of financial and business development experience with multiple life science companies during various stages of financial planning and development.

The following table summarizes our drug candidates, their partnership status and their respective stages of development:

PRODUCT	PRE-CLINICAL	PHASE I	PHASE II	PHASE III	PARTNERS + REGIONS
TTP399 GK Activator	Type 1 Diabetes				
	Type 2 Diabetes				
TTP273 Oral GLP-1R Agonist	Cystic Fibrosis-Related Diabetes				  Asia (excl. Japan)
	Type II Diabetes				
HPP737 PDE4 Inhibitor	SAD/MAD Completed				   Asia (excl. Japan) Asia (excl. Japan) Asia (excl. Japan)
	Psoriasis				
	COPD				
	Atopic Dermatitis				
HPP593 PPAR-δ Agonist	Primary Mitochondrial Myopathy				 Worldwide
Azeliragon RAGE Antagonist	Pancreatic Cancer				 Worldwide
HPP971 Nrf2/Bach1 Modulator	Renal Diseases				 Worldwide
HPP3033 Nrf2/Bach1 Modulator	Undisclosed				
TTP-RA RAGE Antagonist	Type 1 Diabetes Prevention				

Our Type 1 Diabetes Program – *TTP399*

The Company is planning two pivotal, placebo-controlled clinical trials of *TTP399* in subjects with T1D and has engaged with the FDA on the optimal clinical trial designs for these studies. The studies will recruit a total of approximately 1,000 patients across two studies, and at least one of the studies will be one year of treatment. The FDA and the Company

have agreed on the primary endpoint for the studies as the difference between placebo and *TTP399*-treated group in number of hypoglycemia events. We expect site-specific startup activities and patient enrollment for these pivotal studies to begin in the second half of 2023.

In October 2021, we announced positive results of a mechanistic study of *TTP399* in patients with T1D. The study demonstrated that patients with T1D taking *TTP399* experienced no increase in ketone levels relative to placebo during a period of acute insulin withdrawal, indicating no increased risk of ketoacidosis. Consistent with previous clinical studies, improved fasting plasma glucose levels and fewer hypoglycemic events were observed in the *TTP399* treated group during the week of treatment prior to the insulin withdrawal test. The results of the mechanistic study provided additional evidence to support the idea that treatment with *TTP399* will not increase the risk of diabetic ketoacidosis (“DKA”) in patients with T1D. The data demonstrate that in contrast to agents such as SGLT2 inhibitors and GLP-1RAs, *TTP399* does not increase the risk of ketoacidosis when used as an adjunctive therapy to insulin in individuals with T1D. Moreover, these findings support prior studies that demonstrate that *TTP399* improves glucose control and reduces hypoglycemia and suggests a protective effect of *TTP399* against acidosis in people with T1D. Full study results were published in the *Diabetes Obesity and Metabolism* journal in conjunction with the 82nd American Diabetes Association Scientific Sessions on June 6, 2022.

In April 2021, we announced that the FDA granted Breakthrough Therapy Designation (“BTD”) for *TTP399* as an adjunctive therapy to insulin for the treatment of T1D. This designation provides a sponsor with added support and the potential to expedite development and review timelines for a promising new investigational medicine.

G42 Investments

On May 31, 2022, the Company announced entry into agreements that include a \$25.0 million investment by G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd. (“G42 Investments”). Under the terms of the agreements, the Company agreed to sell G42 Investments 10,386,274 shares of the Company’s Class A common stock at an issue price of \$2.41 per share, with \$12.5 million paid in cash at closing, and the remaining amount of \$12.5 million payable on May 31, 2023 pursuant to a promissory note (the “G42 Promissory Note”). The agreements also provide for the potential issuance of \$30.0 million in additional shares of Class A common stock to G42 Investments (or cash in lieu of such issuance at the option of G42 Investments) if the FDA approves the marketing and sale of a pharmaceutical product containing *TTP399* as the active ingredient for treatment of T1D in the United States. The agreements set forth the terms under which the Company and an affiliate of G42 Investments plan to collaborate on clinical trials for pharmaceutical products that contain *TTP399* and grant G42 Investments an exclusive license to develop and commercialize pharmaceutical products containing *TTP399* in a specified territory, principally consisting of the Middle East, North Africa and Central Asia. On February 28, 2023, the Company and G42 Investments amended the G42 Purchase Agreement and modified the G42 Promissory Note to accelerate the payment due under the note. Pursuant to the amendment, on February 28, 2023, the Company received \$12.0 million, which reflected the original amount due under the G42 Promissory Note less a 3.75% discount, in full satisfaction of the note.

CinRx Purchase Agreement

On July 25, 2022, the Company announced entry into agreements that included a \$10.0 million investment by CinPax, LLC (“CinPax”), a subsidiary of CinRx Pharma, LLC (“CinRx”). Under the terms of the agreements, CinPax acquired 4,154,549 shares of Class A common stock of vTv at an issue price of approximately \$2.41 per share, with \$6.0 million paid in cash at closing, and the remaining amount of \$4.0 million was paid to the Company on November 22, 2022. The agreements also provide for the issuance of 1,200,000 warrants to CinRx to acquire additional shares of Class A common stock that become exercisable upon agreed vesting triggers (including FDA approval of *TTP399*). In addition to the investment, the Company and CinRx entered into a Master Service Agreement whereby CinRx provides the Company with consulting, preclinical and clinical trial services, as enumerated in project proposals negotiated between the Company and CinRx from time to time.

Holding Company Structure

vTv Therapeutics Inc. is a holding company, and its principal asset is a controlling equity interest in vTv Therapeutics LLC (“vTv LLC”), the principal operating subsidiary. We have determined that vTv LLC is a variable-interest entity (“VIE”) for accounting purposes and that vTv Therapeutics Inc. is the primary beneficiary of vTv LLC because (through its managing member interest in vTv LLC and the fact that the senior management of vTv Therapeutics Inc. is also the senior management of vTv LLC) it has the power to direct all of the activities of vTv LLC, which include those that most significantly impact vTv LLC’s economic performance. vTv Therapeutics Inc. has therefore consolidated vTv LLC’s results under the VIE accounting model in its consolidated financial statements.

Financial Overview**Revenue**

To date, we have not generated any revenue from drug sales. Our revenue has been primarily derived from up-front proceeds and research fees under collaboration and license agreements.

In the future, we may generate revenue from a combination of product sales, license fees, milestone payments and royalties from the sales of products developed under licenses of our intellectual property. We expect that any revenue we generate will fluctuate from quarter to quarter as a result of the timing and amount of license fees, milestone and other payments, and the amount and timing of payments that we receive upon the sale of our products, to the extent any are successfully commercialized. If we fail to complete the development of our drug candidates in a timely manner or obtain regulatory approval for them, our ability to generate future revenue and our results of operations and financial position will be materially adversely affected.

Research and Development Expenses

Since our inception, we have focused our resources on our research and development activities, including conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, manufacturing development efforts and activities related to regulatory filings for our drug candidates. We recognize research and development expenses as they are incurred. Our direct research and development expenses consist primarily of external costs such as fees paid to investigators, consultants, central laboratories and contract research organizations in connection with our clinical trials, and costs related to acquiring and manufacturing clinical trial materials. Our indirect research and development costs consist primarily of cash and share-based compensation costs, the cost of employee benefits and related overhead expenses for personnel in research and development functions. Since we typically use our employee and infrastructure resources across multiple research and development programs such costs are not allocated to the individual projects.

From our inception, including our predecessor companies, through December 31, 2022, we have incurred approximately \$612.5 million in research and development expenses.

Our research and development expenses by project for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020 were as follows (in thousands):

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Direct research and development expense:			
<i>TTP399</i>	\$ 9,611	\$ 2,608	\$ 917
<i>HPP737</i>	—	2,762	493
<i>Azeliragon</i>	—	822	6,103
Other projects	563	717	683
Indirect research and development expense	2,183	6,415	2,819
Total research and development expense	<u>\$ 12,357</u>	<u>\$ 13,324</u>	<u>\$ 11,015</u>

We plan to continue to incur significant research and development expenses for the foreseeable future as we continue the development of *TTP399* and further advance the development of our other drug candidates, subject to the availability of additional funding.

The successful development of our clinical and preclinical drug candidates is highly uncertain. At this time, we cannot reasonably estimate the nature, timing or costs of the efforts that will be necessary to complete the remainder of the development of any of our clinical or preclinical drug candidates or the period, if any, in which material net cash inflows from these drug candidates may commence. This is due to the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development of our drug candidates, including:

- the uncertainty of the scope, rate of progress and expense of our ongoing, as well as any additional, clinical trials and other research and development activities;
- the potential benefits of our candidates over other therapies;
- our ability to market, commercialize and achieve market acceptance for any of our drug candidates that we are developing or may develop in the future;

- future clinical trial results;
- our ability to enroll patients in our clinical trials;
- the timing and receipt of any regulatory approvals; and
- the filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing of patent claims and other intellectual property rights, and the expense of doing so.

A change in the outcome of any of these variables with respect to the development of a drug candidate could mean a significant change in the costs and timing associated with the development of that drug candidate. For example, if the FDA or another regulatory authority were to require us to conduct clinical trials beyond those that we currently anticipate will be required for the completion of clinical development of a drug candidate, or if we experience significant delays in enrollment in any of our clinical trials, we could be required to expend significant additional financial resources and time with respect to the development of that drug candidate.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries, benefits and related costs for employees in executive, finance, corporate development, human resources and administrative support functions. Other significant general and administrative expenses include accounting and legal services, expenses associated with obtaining and maintaining patents, cost of various consultants, occupancy costs and information systems.

Interest Income

Interest income represents non-cash interest income related to the imputed interest from our promissory note receivable, all of which are recognized in our Consolidated Statement of Operations using the effective interest method.

Interest Expense, Net

For periods prior to December 31, 2021, interest expense primarily consisted of cash and non-cash interest expense related to our Venture Loan and Security Agreement (the "Loan Agreement") with Horizon Technology Finance Corporation and Silicon Valley Bank. The Loan Agreement was fully repaid and terminated in December 2020. Cash interest on the Loan Agreement was recognized at a floating interest rate equal to 10.5% plus the amount by which the one-month London Interbank Offer Rate ("LIBOR") exceeded 0.5%. Non-cash interest expense represented the amortization of the costs incurred in connection with the Loan Agreement, the allocated fair value of the warrants to purchase shares of our Class A common stock issued in connection with the Loan Agreement (the "Warrants") and the accretion of the final interest payments (which were required to be paid in cash upon maturity), all of which are recognized in our Consolidated Statement of Operations using the effective interest method.

Other Income (Expense), Net

Other income/expense primarily consists of unrealized gains or losses attributable to the changes in fair value of the equity investments held in our licensees as well the recognition of changes in fair value of the warrants to purchase shares of our Class A common stock held by related parties.

Results of Operations

In this section, we discuss the results of our operations for the year ended December 31, 2022, compared to the year ended December 31, 2021. For a discussion of the year ended December 31, 2021, compared to the year ended December 31, 2020, please refer to Part II, Item 7, “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2021.

Comparison of the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021

The following table sets forth certain information concerning our results of operations for the periods shown:

(dollars in thousands) Statement of operations data:	Year Ended		
	2022	2021	Change
Revenue	\$ 2,018	\$ 4,005	\$ (1,987)
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	12,357	13,324	(967)
General and administrative	12,201	12,343	(142)
Total operating expenses	24,558	25,667	(1,109)
Operating loss	(22,540)	(21,662)	(878)
Interest income	352	1	351
Interest expense	(15)	(12)	(3)
Other (expense) income, net	(2,670)	4,057	(6,727)
Loss before income taxes	(24,873)	(17,616)	(7,257)
Income tax provision	200	115	85
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(25,073)	(17,731)	(7,342)
Less: Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(5,909)	(4,744)	(1,165)
Net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc.	\$ (19,164)	\$ (12,987)	\$ (6,177)

Revenues

Revenues were \$2.0 million and \$4.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. The revenue recognized in 2022 related to the increase to the transaction price for the license performance obligations under the amended license agreement with Huadong due to the satisfaction of a development milestone. The revenue recognized in 2021 related to the reallocation of revenue to the license and technology transfer performance obligation made in connection with the First Huadong Amendment as well as increases to the transaction prices for the license performance obligations under the Newsoara License Agreement and the Reneo License Agreement due to the satisfaction of development milestones.

Research and Development Expenses

Research and development expenses were \$12.4 million and \$13.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. The decrease in research and development expenses during this period of approximately \$1.0 million, or 7.3%, was primarily driven by (i) decreased spending of \$2.8 million related to the multiple ascending dose study for *HPP737*, due to its completion in 2021, (ii) decrease of \$2.0 million for a license payment in 2021 to Novo Nordisk for the completion of *TTP399* phase 2 studies in 2021, (iii) decreases in indirect and other costs of \$2.4 million primarily related to payroll and severance costs due to the reduction in workforce, and (iv) a decrease in clinical trial costs of \$0.8 million for azeliragon which was driven by discontinuance of its development as a potential treatment of Alzheimer’s disease in patients with type 2 diabetes, partially offset by increases in *TTP399* drug related costs of \$7.0 million and initial preparatory costs for the upcoming clinical trials.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses were \$12.2 million and \$12.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. The decrease in general and administrative expenses during this period of approximately \$0.1 million, or 1.2%, was primarily driven by (i) a decrease of \$2.1 million in payroll costs due to the reduction in workforce, (ii) a decrease of \$0.7 million in severance costs, and (iii) a decrease of \$0.9 million in share-based expense, partially offset by (iv) an increase in legal expense of \$2.3 million, and (v) an increase of \$1.3 million in other general and administrative costs.

Interest Income

Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2022 is related to the imputed interest on the G42 promissory note. Interest income for the year ended December 31, 2021, was insignificant.

Interest Expense, Net

Interest expense for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, was insignificant.

Other Income / (Expense)

Other expense was \$2.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 and was driven by an unrealized loss recognized related to the Company's investment in Reneo as well as the losses related to the change in the fair value of the outstanding warrants to purchase shares of our Class A common stock issued to related parties. Other income was \$4.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2021, and was driven by an unrealized gain recognized related to the Company's investment in Reneo as well as gains related to the change in fair value of the outstanding warrants held by a related party.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Liquidity and Going Concern

As of December 31, 2022, we had an accumulated deficit of \$265.5 million. Since our inception, we have experienced a history of negative cash flows from operating activities. We anticipate that we will continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future as we continue our clinical trials. Further, we expect that we will need additional capital to continue to fund our operations. As of December 31, 2022, we had cash and cash equivalents of \$12.1 million. In addition to available cash and cash equivalents, we are evaluating several financing strategies to fund the on-going and future clinical trials of *TTP399*, including direct equity investments and the potential licensing and monetization of other Company programs. The Company received proceeds of \$12.0 million from the G42 promissory note on February 28, 2023 (See Note 20).

Based on our current operating plan, we may rely on the remaining availability of \$37.3 million under our Controlled Equity OfferingSM Sales Agreement (the "Sales Agreement") with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. ("Cantor Fitzgerald") pursuant to which we could offer and sell, from time to time shares of our Class A common stock (the "ATM Offering") and our ability to sell approximately 9.4 million shares of Class A common stock to Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC ("Lincoln Park") pursuant and subject to the limitations of the purchase agreement (the "LPC Purchase Agreement"). However, the ability to use these sources of capital is dependent on a number of factors, including the prevailing market price of and the volume of trading in our Class A common stock. In addition to available cash and cash equivalents and available funds discussed above, we are seeking possible additional partnering opportunities for our GKA, GLP-1r and other drug candidates which we believe may provide additional cash for use in our operations and the continuation of the clinical trials for our drug candidates. We are evaluating several financing strategies to fund our planned and ongoing clinical trials, including direct equity investments and future public offerings of our common stock. The timing and availability of such financing are not yet known. We are currently in active discussions with respect to financing, partnering and licensing transactions for the further development of *TTP399*, but we may not be successful in completing such transactions. These factors raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

ATM Offering

We have entered into the Sales Agreement with Cantor Fitzgerald pursuant to which we may offer and sell, from time to time, through or to Cantor Fitzgerald, as sales agent or principal, shares of our Class A common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$68.5 million. We are not obligated to sell any shares under the Sales Agreement. Under the terms of the Sales Agreement, we will pay Cantor Fitzgerald a commission of up to 3% of the aggregate proceeds from the sale of shares and reimburse certain legal fees or other disbursements. As of December 31, 2022, we have sold \$31.2 million worth of Class A common stock under the ATM Offering for net proceeds of \$30.3 million, leaving \$37.3 million available to be sold.

Lincoln Park Purchase Agreement

We have entered into the LPC Purchase Agreement, pursuant to which we have the right to sell to Lincoln Park shares of the Company's Class A common stock having an aggregate value of up to \$47.0 million. As of December 31, 2022, we

have issued 5,331,306 of these shares for gross proceeds of approximately \$11.1 million, leaving \$35.9 million available to be sold.

Over the 36-month term of the LPC Purchase Agreement, we have the right, but not the obligation, from time to time, in our sole discretion, to direct Lincoln Park to purchase up to 250,000 shares per day (the “Regular Purchase Share Limit”) of the Class A common stock (each such purchase, a “Regular Purchase”). The Regular Purchase Share Limit will increase to 275,000 shares per day if the closing price of the Class A common stock on the applicable purchase date is not below \$4.00 per share and will further increase to 300,000 shares per day if the closing price of the Class A common stock on the applicable purchase date is not below \$5.00 per share. In any case, Lincoln Park’s maximum obligation under any single Regular Purchase will not exceed \$2,000,000. The purchase price for shares of Class A common stock to be purchased by Lincoln Park under a Regular Purchase will be equal to the lower of (in each case, subject to the adjustments described in the LPC Purchase Agreement): (i) the lowest sale price for the Class A common stock on the applicable purchase date and (ii) the arithmetic average of the three lowest closing sales prices for the Class A common stock during the 10 consecutive trading days prior to the purchase date.

If we direct Lincoln Park to purchase the maximum number of shares of Class A common stock that we may sell in a Regular Purchase, then in addition to such Regular Purchase, and subject to certain conditions and limitations in the LPC Purchase Agreement, we may direct Lincoln Park to make an “accelerated purchase” and an “additional accelerated purchase”, each of an additional number of shares of Class A common stock which may not exceed the lesser of: (i) 300% of the number of shares purchased pursuant to the corresponding Regular Purchase and (ii) 30% of the total number of shares of the common stock traded during a specified period on the applicable purchase date as set forth in the LPC Purchase Agreement. The purchase price for such shares will be the lesser of (i) 97% of the volume weighted average price of the Class A common stock over a certain portion of the date of sale as set forth in the LPC Purchase Agreement and (ii) the closing sale price of the Class A common stock on the date of sale (an “Accelerated Purchase”). Under certain circumstances and in accordance with the LPC Purchase Agreement, we may direct Lincoln Park to purchase shares in multiple Accelerated Purchases on the same trading day.

The LPC Purchase Agreement also prohibits us from directing Lincoln Park to purchase any shares of its Class A common stock if those shares, when aggregated with all other shares of Class A common stock then beneficially owned by Lincoln Park and its affiliates, would result in Lincoln Park and its affiliates having beneficial ownership, at any single point in time, of more than 9.99% of the then total outstanding shares of Class A common stock as calculated pursuant to Section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and Rule 13d-3 thereunder.

Cash Flows

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2022	2021
<i>(dollars in thousands)</i>		
Net cash used in operating activities	\$ (16,022)	\$ (19,308)
Net cash used in investing activities	(21)	—
Net cash provided by financing activities	14,754	26,976
Net (decrease)/increase in cash and cash equivalents	<u>\$ (1,289)</u>	<u>\$ 7,668</u>

Operating Activities

For the year ended December 31, 2022, our net cash used in operating activities decreased by \$3.3 million from the prior year. The significant contributor to the change in cash used during the year was working capital changes offset by \$6.8 million of cash received related to contract liabilities as a result from the excess of the fair value of the Class A common stock issued to G42 Investments.

Investing Activities

For the year ended December 31, 2022, net cash used in investing activities was insignificant. No cash was provided by or used in investing activities for the year ended December 31, 2021.

Financing Activities

For the year ended December 31, 2022, net cash provided by financing activities was \$14.8 million, consisting primarily of net proceeds from sales of our Class A common stock under the G42 Investments and CinRx Purchase

Agreements. For the year ended December 31, 2021, net cash provided by financing activities was driven by sales of shares of our Class A common stock during the year ended December 31, 2021.

Future Funding Requirements

To date, we have not generated any revenue from drug product sales. We do not know when, or if, we will generate any revenue from drug product sales. We do not expect to generate revenue from drug sales unless and until we obtain regulatory approval of and commercialize any of our drug candidates. At the same time, we expect our expenses to continue or to increase in connection with our ongoing development activities, particularly as we continue the research, development and clinical trials of, and seek regulatory approval for, our drug candidates. In addition, subject to obtaining regulatory approval of any of our drug candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses for product sales, marketing, manufacturing and distribution. We anticipate that we will need substantial additional funding in connection with our continuing operations.

Based on our current operating plan, we believe that our current cash and cash equivalents and proceeds from the G42 promissory note of \$12.0 million which was received on February 28, 2023 (see Note 20) will allow us to meet our liquidity requirements through the end of the second quarter of 2023. We plan to finance our operations into the first quarter of 2024 through the use of our cash and cash equivalents and based on current operating plans, we are evaluating several financing strategies to fund the on-going and future clinical trials of *TTP399*, including direct equity investments and the potential licensing and monetization of other Company programs. The timing of any such transactions is not certain, and we may not be able to complete such transactions on acceptable terms, or at all. Even if we are able to complete such transactions, it may contain restrictions on our operations or cause substantial dilution to our stockholders. We have based our estimates on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we may use our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of our drug candidates, we are unable to estimate the amounts of increased capital outlays and operating expenditures necessary to complete the development of our drug candidates. Additionally, we may rely on our ability to sell shares of our Class A common stock pursuant to the ATM Offering and LPC Purchase Agreement. However, the ability to use these sources of capital is dependent on a number of factors, including the prevailing market price of and the volume of trading in the Company's Class A common stock, and we may use our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect.

Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- The progress, costs, results and timing of our planned trials to evaluate *TTP399* as a potential adjunctive therapy for the treatment of type 1 diabetes;
- the willingness of the FDA to rely upon our completed and planned clinical and preclinical studies and other work, as the basis for review and approval of our drug candidates;
- the outcome, costs and timing of seeking and obtaining FDA and any other regulatory approvals;
- the number and characteristics of drug candidates that we pursue, including our drug candidates in preclinical development;
- the ability of our drug candidates to progress through clinical development successfully;
- our need to expand our research and development activities;
- the costs associated with securing, establishing and maintaining commercialization capabilities;
- the costs of acquiring, licensing or investing in businesses, products, drug candidates and technologies;
- our ability to maintain, expand and defend the scope of our intellectual property portfolio, including the amount and timing of any payments we may be required to make, or that we may receive, in connection with the licensing, filing, prosecution, defense and enforcement of any patents or other intellectual property rights;
- our need and ability to hire additional management and scientific and medical personnel;
- the effect of competing technological and market developments;
- our need to implement additional internal systems and infrastructure, including financial and reporting systems;
- the economic and other terms, timing and success of our existing licensing arrangements and any collaboration, licensing or other arrangements into which we may enter in the future;
- the amount of any payments we are required to make to M&F TTP Holdings Two LLC in the future under the Tax Receivable Agreement; and

- the impact and duration of the COVID-19 outbreak / pandemic.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial revenue from drug sales, we expect to finance our cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, marketing and distribution arrangements and other collaborations, strategic alliances and licensing arrangements. We currently have committed external source of funds available through the ATM Offering and LPC Purchase Agreement.

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the ownership interests of our common stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect the rights of our common stockholders. Debt financing and preferred equity financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants that will further limit or restrict our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or marketing, distribution or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may be required to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams or drug candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to obtain additional funding, we could be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our research and development programs or commercialization efforts, or pursue one or more alternative strategies, such as restructuring, any of which could adversely affect our business prospects.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

As of December 31, 2022, we do not currently have outstanding any off-balance sheet arrangements as defined under SEC rules.

Discussion of Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

Our management's discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations is based on our financial statements, which we have prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States ("GAAP"). The preparation of our financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of our financial statements, as well as the reported revenues and expenses during the reported periods. We evaluate these estimates and judgments on an ongoing basis. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other factors that we believe are reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions.

While our significant accounting policies are more fully described in Note 2, "Summary of Significant Accounting Policies," to our audited financial statements, we believe that the following accounting policies related to revenue recognition, research and development, income taxes, and share-based compensation are the most critical for fully understanding and evaluating our financial condition and results of operations.

Basis of Presentation

The Company is a holding company, and its principal asset is a controlling equity interest in vTv LLC, the Company's principal operating subsidiary. The Company has determined that vTv LLC is a VIE for accounting purposes and that the Company is the primary beneficiary of vTv LLC because (through its managing member interest in vTv LLC and the fact that the senior management of the Company is also the senior management of vTv LLC) it has the power to direct all of the activities of vTv LLC, which include those that most significantly impact vTv LLC's economic performance. The Company has therefore consolidated vTv LLC's results under the VIE accounting model in its consolidated financial statements.

Revenue Recognition

The majority of our revenue results from its license and collaboration agreements associated with the development of investigational drug products. We account for a contract when it has approval and commitment from both parties, the rights of the parties are identified, payment terms are identified, the contract has commercial substance and collectability of consideration is probable. For each contract meeting these criteria, we identify the performance obligations included within the contract. A performance obligation is a promise in a contract to transfer a distinct good or service to the customer. We then recognize revenue under each contract as the related performance obligations are satisfied.

The transaction price under the contract is determined based on the value of the consideration expected to be received in exchange for the transferred assets or services. Development, regulatory and sales milestones included in our collaboration agreements are considered to be variable consideration. The amount of variable consideration expected to be received is included in the transaction price when it becomes probable that the milestone will be met. For contracts with multiple

performance obligations, the contract's transaction price is allocated to each performance obligation using our best estimate of the standalone selling price of each distinct good or service in the contract. The primary method used to estimate standalone selling price is the expected cost plus margin approach. Revenue is recognized over the related period over which we expect the services to be provided using a proportional performance model or a straight-line method of recognition if there is no discernable pattern over which the services will be provided.

See Note 2 "Summary of Significant Accounting Policies", to the Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 15 of Part IV of this Annual Report on Form 10-K for further information regarding the adoption of ASC 606, "Revenue From Contracts With Customers" and the related changes in the recognition of revenue that were adopted on January 1, 2018.

Research and Development

Major components of research and development costs include cash compensation, costs of preclinical studies, clinical trials and related clinical manufacturing, costs of drug development, costs of materials and supplies, facilities cost, overhead costs, regulatory and compliance costs, and fees paid to consultants and other entities that conduct certain research and development activities on our behalf. Costs incurred in research and development are expensed as incurred.

We record accruals based on estimates of the services received, efforts expended and amounts owed pursuant to contracts with numerous contract research organizations. In the normal course of business, we contract with third parties to perform various clinical study activities in the ongoing development of potential products. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation and variation from contract to contract and may result in uneven payment flows. Payments under the contracts depend on factors such as the achievement of certain events and the completion of portions of the clinical study or similar conditions. The objective of our accrual policy is to match the recording of expenses in our financial statements to the actual services received and efforts expended. As such, expense accruals related to clinical studies are recognized based on our estimate of the degree of completion of the event or events specified in the specific clinical study.

We record nonrefundable advance payments we make for future research and development activities as prepaid expenses. Prepaid expenses are recognized as expense in the statements of operations as we receive the related goods or services.

Income Taxes

In connection with the IPO, vTv Therapeutics Inc. was formed. From August 1, 2015, vTv Therapeutics Inc. has been subject to corporate level income taxes. Prior to July 30, 2015, our predecessor entities were taxed as partnerships and all their income and deductions flowed through and were subject to tax at the partner level.

vTv Therapeutics Inc. holds vTv Units and is required to recognize deferred tax assets and liabilities for the difference between the financial reporting and tax basis of its investment in vTv LLC.

Our income tax expense, deferred tax assets and liabilities and reserves for unrecognized tax benefits reflect management's best assessment of estimated future taxes to be paid. We are subject to income taxes in both the United States and various state jurisdictions. Significant judgments and estimates are required in determining the consolidated income tax expense.

We account for income taxes under the asset and liability method, which requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events included in the financial statements. Under this method, we determine deferred tax assets and liabilities on the basis of differences between the financial statement and tax bases of assets and liabilities by using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which the differences are expected to reverse. The effect of a change in tax rates on deferred tax assets and liabilities is recognized in income in the period in which the enactment date occurs.

We recognize deferred tax assets to the extent we believe these assets are more-likely-than-not to be realized. In making such a determination, we consider all available positive and negative evidence, including future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences, projected future taxable income, tax planning strategies and recent results of operations.

We record uncertain tax positions on the basis of a two-step process in which (1) we determine whether it is more-likely-than-not that the tax positions will be sustained on the basis of the technical merits of the position and (2) for those tax positions meeting the more-likely-than-not recognition threshold, we recognize the largest amount of tax benefit that is more than 50% likely to be realized upon ultimate settlement with the related tax authority.

Interest and penalties related to income taxes are included in the benefit (provision) for income taxes in our Consolidated Statement of Operations. We have not incurred any significant interest or penalties related to income taxes in any of the periods presented.

Share-Based Compensation

Compensation expense for share-based compensation awards issued is based on the fair value of the award at the date of grant, and compensation expense is recognized for those awards earned over the service period. The grant date fair value of stock option awards is estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing formula. Expected volatility is based on the historical volatility of the Company's Class A common stock over the most recent period commensurate with the estimated expected term of the Company's stock options offering period which is derived from historical experience. The risk-free rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant. Due to a lack of historical exercise data, we estimate the expected life of our outstanding stock options using the simplified method specified under Staff Accounting Bulletin Topic 14.D.2. The fair value of restricted stock units ("RSU") grants are based on the market value of our Class A common stock on the date of grant. We also estimate the amount of share-based awards that are expected to be forfeited based on historical employee turnover rates.

Effect of Recent Accounting Pronouncements

See discussion of recent accounting pronouncements in Note 2, "Summary of Significant Accounting Policies", to the Consolidated Financial Statements in Item 15 of Part IV of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

Interest Rate Risk

We do not currently have any material interest rate exposure.

Market Risk

Our exposure to market risk is limited to our cash and cash equivalents, all of which have maturities of one year or less. The goals of our investment strategy are preservation of capital, fulfillment of liquidity needs and fiduciary control of cash and investments. We also seek to maximize income from our investments without assuming significant risk. To achieve our goals, we maintain cash and cash equivalents in a financial institution that management believes to be of high credit quality.

Foreign Currency Risk

We do not have any material foreign currency exposure.

ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

The information required by this Item is included in our Financial Statements and Supplementary Data listed in Item 15 of Part IV of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

None.

ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, management has evaluated the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) or 15d-15(e) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) as of December 31, 2022. Based upon that evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that, as of December 31, 2022, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective in causing material information relating to us (including our consolidated subsidiaries) to be recorded, processed, summarized and reported by management on a timely basis and to ensure the quality and timeliness of our public disclosures with SEC disclosure obligations.

Our management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, does not expect that our disclosure controls and procedures will prevent all errors and all fraud. A control system, no matter how well conceived and

operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met. Further, the design of a control system must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints, and the benefits of controls must be considered relative to their costs. Because of the inherent limitations in all control systems, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that all control issues and instances of fraud, if any, with the Company have been detected. These inherent limitations include the realities that judgments in decision-making can be faulty and that breakdowns can occur because of simple error and mistake. Additionally, controls can be circumvented by the individual acts of some persons, by collusion of two or more people or by management override of controls.

The design of any system of controls also is based in part upon certain assumptions about the likelihood of future events, and there can be no assurance that any design will succeed in achieving its stated goals under all potential future conditions. Over time, a control may become inadequate because of changes in conditions or because the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate. Because of the inherent limitations in a cost-effective control system, misstatements due to error or fraud may occur and may not be detected.

Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Our internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external reporting purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Our internal control over financial reporting includes those written policies and procedures that:

- pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of assets;
- provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- provide reasonable assurance that receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with management and director authorization; and
- provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of assets that could have a material effect on the consolidated financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

Management assessed the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2022. Management based this assessment on criteria described in Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). Based on this assessment, management determined that as of December 31, 2022, we maintained effective internal control over financial reporting.

Changes to Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There have been no changes in our internal control over financial reporting during our most recent fiscal quarter that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

ITEM 9C. DISCLOSURE REGARDING FOREIGN JURISDICTIONS THAT PREVENT INSPECTIONS

Not applicable

PART III

ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement for the 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement for the 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement for the 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement for the 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES

The information required by this item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement for the 2023 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2022.

PART IV**ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES**

(a)(1) Financial Statements

The following documents are included on pages F-1 through F-34 attached hereto and are filed as part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-2
Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2022 and 2021	F-4
Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020	F-5
Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest and Stockholders' Deficit for the Years Ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020	F-6
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020	F-7
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	F-8

(a)(2) Financial Statement Schedules

Not applicable

(a)(3) List of Exhibits

Exhibit Number	Description
3.1	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
3.2	Certificate of Amendment to Certificate of Incorporation of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed May 5, 2021 (File No. 001-37524)).
3.3	Second Amended and Restated By-laws (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed March 3, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
4.1	Form of Warrant to Purchase Class A Common Stock (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 4.1 to the Company's Form 10-K, filed February 24, 2017 (File No. 001-37524)).
4.2	Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 4.2 to the Company's Form 10-K, filed February 27, 2018 (File No. 001-37524)).
4.3	Warrant to Purchase Common Stock (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 4.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed July 25, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
4.4	Description of Capital Stock.
10.1	Reimbursement of Fees and Expenses Letter Agreement, dated July 16, 2015, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and MacAndrews & Forbes Group, LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.6 to Amendment No. 5 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed July 23, 2015 (File No. 333-204951)).
10.2	Reorganization Agreement, dated as of July 29, 2015, among vTv Therapeutics Inc., vTv Therapeutics LLC, vTvx Holdings I LLC, vTvx Holdings II LLC and vTv Therapeutics Holdings LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.3	Amended and Restated Limited Liability Company Agreement of vTv Therapeutics LLC, dated July 29, 2015 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.4	Investor Rights Agreement, dated as of July 29, 2015, among vTv Therapeutics Inc., vTv Therapeutics Holdings LLC and other stockholders party thereto from time to time (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.5	Exchange Agreement, dated as of July 29, 2015, among vTv Therapeutics LLC, vTv Therapeutics Inc. and vTv Therapeutics Holdings LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.4 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description</u>
10.6	Tax Receivable Agreement, dated as of July 29, 2015, among vTv Therapeutics Inc. and the other persons named therein (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.5 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.7	Form of Indemnification Agreement (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.7 to Amendment No. 4 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1, dated July 23, 2015 (File No. 333-204951)).
10.8†	vTv Therapeutics Inc. 2015 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.6 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.9†	vTv Therapeutics Inc. Form of Nonqualified Option Award Agreement (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.7 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed August 4, 2015 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.10††	Agreement Concerning Glucokinase Activator Project, dated as of February 20, 2007, by and between Novo Nordisk A/S and TransTech Pharma, Inc. (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.8 to Amendment No. 1 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1, dated June 19, 2015 (File No. 333-204951)).
10.11††	License and Research Agreement, dated as of December 21, 2017, by and between Hangzhou Zhongmei Huadong Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. And vTv Therapeutics LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.19 to the Company's Form 10-K, filed February 27, 2018 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.12††	License and Research Agreement, dated as of December 21, 2017, by and between Reneo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and vTv Therapeutics LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.20 to the Company's Form 10-K, filed February 27, 2018 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.13††	License Agreement, dated as of May 31, 2018, by and between Newsoara Biopharma Co., Ltd. and vTv Therapeutics LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 10-Q, filed August 3, 2018 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.20	Controlled Equity OfferingSM Sales Agreement, dated as of April 24, 2020, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 1.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed on April 24, 2020 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.21	First Amendment to vTv Therapeutics Inc. 2015 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 3.5 to the Company's Form S-8, filed August 3, 2020 (File No. 333-240304)).
10.22	Purchase Agreement, dated November 24, 2020, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed on November 24, 2020 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.23	Registration Rights Agreement, dated November 24, 2020, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed on November 24, 2020 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.24††	License Agreement, dated December 11, 2020, by and between Anteris Bio, Inc. and vTv Therapeutics LLC.
10.25††	First Amendment to License Agreement, dated as of January 14, 2021, by and between Hangzhou Zhongmei Huadong Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd. And vTv Therapeutics LLC.
10.26†	Employment Agreement, dated as of October 19, 2021, by and between Deepa Prasad and vTv Therapeutics LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed October 20, 2021 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.27†	Inducement Award Agreement dated as of October 19, 2021, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and Deepa Prasad (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed October 20, 2021 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.28†	Separation Agreement and General Release, dated as of March 4, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics LLC and Deepa Prasad (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 10-Q, filed May 12, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.29†	Employment Agreement, dated as of March 1, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics LLC and Richard S. Nelson (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 10-Q, filed May 12, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.30	Common Stock Purchase Agreement, dated as of May 31, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd. (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 1.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed June 1, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description</u>
10.31	Common Stock and Warrant Purchase Agreement, dated as of July 22, 2022, by and among vTv Therapeutics Inc., CinPax, LLC and CinRx Pharma, LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed July 25, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.32†	Employment Agreement, dated as of July 25, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics LLC and Paul Sekhri (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed July 27, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.33†	Inducement Award Agreement, dated as of July 26, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc. and Paul Sekhri (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed July 27, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.34†	Employment Agreement, dated as of December 8, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics LLC and Steven Tuch (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K, filed December 13, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.35	Collaboration and License Agreement, dated as of May 31, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics, LLC and Cogna Technology Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 10-Q, filed on August 15, 2022 (File No. 001-37524)).
10.36*	Deed of Novation, dated as of December 21, 2022, by and between vTv Therapeutics LLC, G42 Healthcare Technology Projects LLC and G42 Healthcare Technology Solutions LLC (f/k/a Cogna Technology Solutions LLC).
10.37*	Deed of Variation, dated as of February 28, 2023, by and between vTv Therapeutics Inc., G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd., and Group 42 Holding Limited.
21.1*	Subsidiaries of vTv Therapeutics Inc.
23.1*	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.
31.1*	Certification of President and Chief Executive Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
31.2*	Certification of Chief Financial Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
32.1*	Certification of President and Chief Executive Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
32.2*	Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
101*	The following materials from the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2022, formatted in iXBRL (Inline Extensible Business Reporting Language): (i) Consolidated Balance Sheets (unaudited), (ii) Consolidated Statements of Operations (unaudited), (iii) Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest and Stockholders' Deficit (unaudited), (iv) Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows (unaudited) and (v) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited), tagged as blocks of text and including detailed tags
104*	The cover page from this Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2022, formatted in Inline XBRL

-
- † Management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement
 †† Confidential treatment received with respect to portions of this exhibit.
 * Filed herewith

ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY

None.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

Date: March 6, 2023

VTV THERAPEUTICS INC.
(Registrant)

By: /s/ Paul J. Sekhri
Paul J. Sekhri
President and Chief Executive Officer

By: /s/ Steven Tuch
Steven Tuch
Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>/s/ Jonathan Isaacsohn</u> Jonathan Isaacsohn	Executive Chairperson	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Paul J. Sekhri</u> Paul J. Sekhri	President and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Steven Tuch</u> Steven Tuch	Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ John A. Fry</u> John A. Fry	Director	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Hersh Kozlov</u> Hersh Kozlov	Director	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Keith Harris</u> Keith Harris	Director	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Howard L. Weiner</u> Howard L. Weiner	Director	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Chandresh Harjivan</u> Chandresh Harjivan	Director	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Richard Nelson</u> Richard Nelson	Director and Executive Vice President, Corporate Development	March 6, 2023
<u>/s/ Fahed Al Marzooqi</u> Fahed Al Marzooqi	Director	March 6, 2023

INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm (PCAOB ID No. (42))</u>	F-2
Financial Statements:	
<u>Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2022 and 2021</u>	F-4
<u>Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020</u>	F-5
<u>Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest and Stockholders' Deficit for the Years Ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020</u>	F-6
<u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020</u>	F-7
<u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	F-8

The financial statements and other disclosures contained in this report include those of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (“we”, the “Company” or the “Registrant”), which is the registrant, and those of vTv Therapeutics LLC (“vTv LLC”), which is the principal operating subsidiary of the Registrant. Unless the context suggests otherwise, references in this Annual Report on Form 10-K to the “Company”, “we”, “us” and “our” refer to vTv Therapeutics Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Shareholders and the Board of Directors of vTv Therapeutics Inc.

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the Company) as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, the related consolidated statements of operations, changes in redeemable noncontrolling interest and stockholders' deficit and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2022, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at December 31, 2022 and 2021, and the consolidated results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2022, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

The Company's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements, the Company has not generated any product revenue, has not achieved profitable operations, has insufficient liquidity to sustain operations and has stated that substantial doubt exists about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Management's evaluation of the events and conditions and management's plans regarding these matters are also described in Note 1. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Critical Audit Matter

The critical audit matter communicated below is a matter arising from the current period audit of the financial statements that was communicated or required to be communicated to the audit committee and that: (1) relates to accounts or disclosures that are material to the financial statements and (2) involved our especially challenging, subjective or complex judgments. The communication of the critical audit matter does not alter in any way our opinion on the consolidated financial statements, taken as a whole, and we are not, by communicating the critical audit matter below, providing a separate opinion on the critical audit matter or on the account or disclosure to which it relates.

Accrued Development Costs

Description of the Matter

As discussed in Notes 2 and 8 to the consolidated financial statements, the Company has recorded \$3.6 million of accrued expenses at December 31, 2022, which includes costs for clinical trial and contract manufacturing activities (together, clinical related activities) based upon estimates of expenses incurred through the balance sheet date that have yet to be invoiced by the contract research organizations (CROs), clinical study sites, contract manufacturing organizations, or other vendors (together, clinical vendors). This accrual process involves identifying services that have been performed and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost when the Company has not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of actual cost incurred.

Auditing the Company's accruals for clinical vendor costs associated with in-process clinical related activities is judgmental because the timing and pattern of vendor invoicing may not correspond to the level of services provided and the estimate can incorporate significant assumptions such as expected patient enrollment, site activation, and estimated project duration.

How We Addressed the Matter in Our Audit

To evaluate the clinical vendors accrued costs, our audit procedures included, among others, reading the Company's contracts with clinical vendors (including pending change orders), testing the completeness and accuracy of the underlying data used in the estimate of the level of service provided including evaluating the applicable significant assumptions as discussed above for the in process contracts with clinical vendors. To assess the significant assumptions, we corroborated the progress of clinical related activities through inquiry with the Company's operations personnel that oversee the clinical trials contract manufacturing activities and with information obtained directly from third party clinical vendors, as well as tested invoices received from clinical vendors subsequent to the balance sheet date.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2000.
Raleigh, North Carolina
March 6, 2023

vTv Therapeutics Inc.
Consolidated Balance Sheets
(dollars in thousands, except per share and share data)

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 12,126	\$ 13,415
Accounts receivable, net	173	57
Promissory note receivable	12,243	—
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	2,537	2,049
Current deposits	15	100
Total current assets	27,094	15,621
Property and equipment, net	207	278
Operating lease right-of-use assets	349	402
Long-term investments	5,588	9,173
Total assets	\$ 33,238	\$ 25,474
Liabilities, Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest and Stockholders' Deficit		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$ 7,313	\$ 8,023
Current portion of operating lease liabilities	154	184
Current portion of contract liabilities	17	35
Current portion of notes payable	224	256
Total current liabilities	7,708	8,498
Contract liabilities, net of current portion	18,669	—
Operating lease liabilities, net of current portion	338	492
Warrant liability, related party	684	1,262
Total liabilities	27,399	10,252
Commitments and contingencies		
Redeemable noncontrolling interest	16,579	24,962
Stockholders' deficit:		
Class A Common Stock, \$0.01 par value; 200,000,000 shares authorized and 81,483,600 outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and 200,000,000 authorized and 66,942,777 shares outstanding as of December 31, 2021	815	669
Class B Common Stock, \$0.01 par value; 100,000,000 shares authorized, and 23,093,860 outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and 2021	232	232
Additional paid-in capital	253,737	238,193
Accumulated deficit	(265,524)	(248,834)
Total stockholders' deficit attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc.	(10,740)	(9,740)
Total liabilities, redeemable noncontrolling interest and stockholders' deficit	\$ 33,238	\$ 25,474

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

vTv Therapeutics Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Operations
(in thousands, except per share and share data)

	Years Ending December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Revenue	\$ 2,018	\$ 4,005	\$ 6,414
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	12,357	13,324	11,015
General and administrative	12,201	12,343	7,251
Total operating expenses	24,558	25,667	18,266
Operating loss	(22,540)	(21,662)	(11,852)
Other (expense) income	(3,616)	2,448	—
Other income (expense) – related party	946	1,609	(270)
Interest income	352	1	12
Interest expense	(15)	(12)	(692)
Loss before income taxes and noncontrolling interest	(24,873)	(17,616)	(12,802)
Income tax provision	200	115	—
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	(25,073)	(17,731)	(12,802)
Less: net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(5,909)	(4,744)	(4,303)
Net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc.	\$ (19,164)	\$ (12,987)	\$ (8,499)
Net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc. common shareholders	\$ (19,164)	\$ (12,987)	\$ (8,499)
Net loss per share of vTv Therapeutics Inc. Class A common stock, basic and diluted	\$ (0.26)	\$ (0.21)	\$ (0.18)
Weighted average number of vTv Therapeutics Inc. Class A common stock, basic and diluted	74,876,200	60,732,636	47,137,917

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

vTv Therapeutics Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest and Stockholders' Deficit
(in thousands, except share data)

For the twelve months ended December 31, 2022

	Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest	Class A Common Stock		Class B Common Stock		Additional Paid-in Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders' Deficit
		Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount			
Balances at December 31, 2019	\$ 40,183	40,918,522	\$ 409	23,094,221	\$ 232	\$ 183,858	\$ (233,522)	\$ (49,023)
Net loss	(4,303)	—	—	—	—	—	(8,499)	(8,499)
Share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	1,009	—	1,009
Issuance of Class A Common Stock under ATM offering	—	5,480,941	55	—	—	12,441	—	12,496
Issuance of Class A Common Stock to a related party under the Letter Agreements	—	6,250,000	63	—	—	9,937	—	10,000
Issuance of Class A Common Stock under LPC Agreement	—	1,389,580	14	—	—	1,916	—	1,930
Vesting of restricted stock units	—	11,667	—	—	—	—	—	—
Change in redemption value of noncontrolling interest	48,015	—	—	—	—	—	(48,015)	(48,015)
Balances at December 31, 2020	83,895	54,050,710	541	23,094,221	232	209,161	(290,036)	(80,102)
Net loss	(4,744)	—	—	—	—	—	(12,987)	(12,987)
Share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	2,356	—	2,356
Issuance of Class A Common Stock under ATM offering	—	8,929,147	89	—	—	17,581	—	17,670
Exchange of Class B Common Stock for Class A Common Stock	—	361	—	(361)	—	—	—	—
Exercise of stock options	—	20,833	—	—	—	47	—	47
Issuance of Class A Common Stock under LPC Agreement	—	3,941,726	39	—	—	9,048	—	9,087
Change in redemption value of noncontrolling interest	(54,189)	—	—	—	—	—	54,189	54,189
Balances at December 31, 2021	24,962	66,942,777	669	23,093,860	232	238,193	(248,834)	(9,740)
Net loss	(5,909)	—	—	—	—	—	(19,164)	(19,164)
Share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	1,272	—	1,272
Issuance of Class A Common Stock to collaboration agreement, net of offering costs	—	10,386,274	104	—	—	4,936	—	5,040
Issuance of Class A Common Stock under CinRx purchase agreement, net of offering costs	—	4,154,549	42	—	—	9,336	—	9,378
Change in redemption value of noncontrolling interest	(2,474)	—	—	—	—	—	2,474	2,474
Balances at December 31, 2022	\$ 16,579	81,483,600	\$ 815	23,093,860	\$ 232	\$ 253,737	\$ (265,524)	\$ (10,740)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

vTv Therapeutics Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(in thousands)

	Twelve Months Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Cash flows from operating activities:			
Net loss before noncontrolling interest	\$ (25,073)	\$ (17,731)	\$ (12,802)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss before noncontrolling interest to net cash used in operating activities:			
Depreciation expense	92	89	94
Non-cash interest income	(352)	—	—
Interest expense	15	—	—
Share-based compensation expense	1,272	2,356	1,009
Change in fair value of investments	3,585	(2,448)	(4,245)
Change in fair value of warrants, related party	(946)	(1,609)	270
Amortization of debt discount	—	—	380
Changes in assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	(116)	101	(153)
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(403)	(839)	(254)
Long-term deposits	—	—	444
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	(856)	1,828	(997)
Accreted interest on debt	—	—	(1,512)
Contract liabilities	6,760	(1,005)	(24)
Other liabilities	—	(50)	(210)
Net cash used in operating activities	(16,022)	(19,308)	(18,000)
Cash flows from investing activities:			
Purchases of property and equipment	(21)	—	—
Net cash used in investing activities	(21)	—	—
Cash flows from financing activities:			
Proceeds from issuance of Class A Common Stock to a related party under the Letter Agreements	—	—	10,000
Proceeds from sale of Class A common stock to collaboration partner, net of offering costs	5,040	—	—
Proceeds from sale of Class A common stock and warrants, net of offering costs	9,746	—	—
Proceeds from issuance of Class A Common Stock, net of offering costs	—	26,757	14,426
Proceeds from exercise of stock options	—	47	—
Proceeds from debt issuance	776	887	500
Repayment of notes payable	(808)	(715)	(5,456)
Net cash provided by financing activities	14,754	26,976	19,470
Net (decrease) increase in cash, cash equivalents	(1,289)	7,668	1,470
Total cash, cash equivalents beginning of year	13,415	5,747	4,277
Total cash, cash equivalents, end of year	\$ 12,126	\$ 13,415	\$ 5,747
Supplemental cash flow information:			
Cash paid for interest	\$ 15	\$ 11	\$ 623
Cash paid for income taxes	\$ 200	\$ 115	\$ —
Non-cash activities:			
Notes receivable recorded at fair value from collaboration partner	\$ 11,891	\$ —	\$ —
Change in redemption value of noncontrolling interest	\$ (2,474)	\$ (54,189)	\$ 48,015

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.

vTv Therapeutics Inc.
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements
(dollar amounts are in thousands, unless otherwise noted)

Note 1: Description of Business, Basis of Presentation and Going Concern**Description of Business**

vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the “Company,” the “Registrant,” “we” or “us”) was incorporated in the state of Delaware in April 2015. The Company is a clinical stage pharmaceutical company focused on treating metabolic diseases to minimize their long-term complications through end-organ protection.

Principles of Consolidation

vTv Therapeutics Inc. is a holding company, and its principal asset is a controlling equity interest in vTv Therapeutics LLC (“vTv LLC”), the Company’s principal operating subsidiary, which is a clinical stage pharmaceutical company engaged in the discovery and development of orally administered small molecule drug candidates to fill significant unmet medical needs.

The Company has determined that vTv LLC is a variable-interest entity (“VIE”) for accounting purposes and that vTv Therapeutics Inc. is the primary beneficiary of vTv LLC because (through its managing member interest in vTv LLC and the fact that the senior management of vTv Therapeutics Inc. is also the senior management of vTv LLC) it has the power and benefits to direct all of the activities of vTv LLC, which include those that most significantly impact vTv LLC’s economic performance. vTv Therapeutics Inc. has therefore consolidated vTv LLC’s results pursuant to Accounting Standards Codification Topic 810, “Consolidation” in its Consolidated Financial Statements. Various holders own non-voting interests in vTv LLC, representing a 22.1% economic interest in vTv LLC, effectively restricting vTv Therapeutics Inc.’s interest to 77.9% of vTv LLC’s economic results, subject to increase in the future, should vTv Therapeutics Inc. purchase additional non-voting common units (“vTv Units”) of vTv LLC, or should the holders of vTv Units decide to exchange such units (together with shares of the Company’s Class B common stock, par value \$0.01 (“Class B common stock”)) for shares of Class A common stock (or cash) pursuant to the Exchange Agreement (as defined in Note 14). vTv Therapeutics Inc. has provided financial and other support to vTv LLC in the form of its purchase of vTv Units with the net proceeds of the Company’s initial public offering (“IPO”) in 2015, its registered direct offering in March 2019, and, its agreeing to be a co-borrower under the Venture Loan and Security Agreement (the “Loan Agreement”) with Horizon Technology Finance Corporation and Silicon Valley Bank (together, the “Lenders”) which was entered into in 2016. vTv Therapeutics Inc. entered into the letter agreements with MacAndrews and Forbes Group LLC (“M&F Group”), a related party and an affiliate of MacAndrews & Forbes Incorporated (together with its affiliates “MacAndrews”) in December 2017, July 2018, December 2018, March 2019, September 2019, and December 2019 (each a “Letter Agreement” and collectively, the “Letter Agreements”). In addition, vTv Therapeutics Inc. also entered into the Controlled Equity OfferingSM Sales Agreement (the “Sales Agreement”) with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. (“Cantor Fitzgerald”) (the “ATM Offering”), the purchase agreement with Lincoln Park Capital Fund, LLC (“Lincoln Park”) (the “LPC Purchase Agreement”), the common stock purchase agreement with G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd (“G42 Investments”) (the “G42 Purchase Agreement”) and the common stock and warrant purchase agreement with CinPax, LLC and CinRx, LLC, respectively (the “CinRx Purchase Agreement”). vTv Therapeutics Inc. will not be required to provide financial or other support for vTv LLC. However, vTv Therapeutics Inc. will control its business and other activities through its managing member interest in vTv LLC, and its management is the management of vTv LLC. Nevertheless, because vTv Therapeutics Inc. will have no material assets other than its interests in vTv LLC, any financial difficulties at vTv LLC could result in vTv Therapeutics Inc. recognizing a loss.

Going Concern and Liquidity

To date, the Company has not generated any product revenue and has not achieved profitable operations. The continuing development of our drug candidates will require additional financing. From its inception through December 31, 2022, the Company has funded its operations primarily through a combination of private placements of common and preferred equity, research collaboration agreements, upfront and milestone payments for license agreements, debt and equity financings and the completion of its IPO in August 2015. As of December 31, 2022, the Company had an accumulated deficit of \$265.5 million and has generated net losses in each year of its existence.

As of December 31, 2022, the Company’s liquidity sources included cash and cash equivalents of \$12.1 million. Based on our current operating plan, we believe that our current cash and cash equivalents and proceeds from the \$12.0 million G42 promissory note, which was received on February 28, 2023 (See Note 20), will allow us to meet our liquidity requirements through the end of the second quarter of 2023. To meet our future funding requirements into the first quarter of 2024,

including funding the on-going and future clinical trials of *TTP399*, we are evaluating several financing strategies, including direct equity investments and the potential licensing and monetization of other Company programs.

The Company may also use its remaining availability of \$37.3 million under its Controlled Equity OfferingSM Sales Agreement (the “Sales Agreement”) with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. (“Cantor Fitzgerald”) pursuant to which the Company may offer and sell, from time to time shares of the Company’s Class A common stock (the “ATM Offering”) and the ability to sell an additional 9,437,376 shares of Class A common stock under the LPC Purchase Agreement based on the remaining number of registered shares. However, the ability to use these sources of capital is dependent on a number of factors, including the prevailing market price of and the volume of trading in the Company’s Class A common stock. See Note 12 for further details.

If we are unable to raise additional capital as and when needed, or upon acceptable terms, such failure would have a significant negative impact on our financial condition. As such, these conditions raise substantial doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern.

The Company’s financial statements have been prepared assuming the Company will continue as a going concern, which contemplates, among other things, the realization of assets and satisfaction of liabilities in the normal course of business. The Consolidated Financial Statements do not include adjustments to reflect the possible future effects on the recoverability and classification of recorded assets or the amounts of liabilities that might be necessary should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires the Company to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

On an ongoing basis, the Company evaluates its estimates, including those related to the grant date fair value of equity awards, the fair value of warrants to purchase shares of its Class A common stock, the fair value of its Class B common stock, the useful lives of property and equipment and the fair value of the Company’s debt, among others. The Company bases its estimates on historical experience and on various other assumptions that it believes to be reasonable, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities.

Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially expose the Company to concentrations of credit risk consist principally of cash on deposit with one financial institution. The balance of the cash account frequently exceed insured limits.

One customer represented 100% of the revenue earned during the year ended December 31, 2022. Three customers represented 100% of the revenue earned during the year ended December 31, 2021 and 2020.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers any highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash and cash equivalents.

Collaboration Revenue and Accounts Receivable

The majority of the Company’s collaboration revenue and accounts receivable relates to its agreements to license certain of its potential drug products for development. See Note 3 for further discussion of the Company’s collaboration agreements.

Accounts receivable are stated at net realizable value. On a periodic basis, the Company evaluates its accounts receivable and establishes an allowance based on its history of collections and write-offs and the current status of all receivables.

Property and Equipment and other Long-lived Assets

The Company records property and equipment at cost less accumulated depreciation. Costs of renewals and improvements that extend the useful lives of the assets are capitalized. Maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred. Depreciation is determined on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful lives of the assets, which generally range from three to ten years. Leasehold improvements are depreciated over the shorter of the useful life of the asset or the term of the

related lease. Upon retirement or disposition of assets, the costs and related accumulated depreciation are removed from the accounts with the resulting gains or losses, if any, reflected in results of operations.

The estimated useful lives of property and equipment are as follows:

Asset Category	Useful Life (in years)
Laboratory equipment	7
Computers and hardware	3-5
Furniture and office equipment	3-7
Software	3
Leasehold improvements	Shorter of useful life or remaining term of lease

The Company periodically assesses its property and equipment and other long-lived assets for impairment in accordance with the relevant accounting guidance. No such charges were recognized during the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 or 2020. There were no assets held for sale at December 31, 2022 or 2021.

Investments

Investments in entities in which the Company has no control or significant influence, is not the primary beneficiary, and have a readily determinable fair value are classified as equity investments with readily determinable fair value. The investments are measured at fair value based on a quoted market price per unit in active markets multiplied by the number of units held without consideration of transaction costs (Level 1). Gains and losses are recorded in other income (expense), net on the Consolidated Statements of Operations.

Equity investments without readily determinable fair value include ownership rights that do not provide the Company with control or significant influence and these investments do not have readily determinable fair values. The Company has elected to measure its equity investments without readily determinable fair values at cost minus impairment, if any, plus or minus changes resulting from observable price changes in orderly transactions for the identical or similar investment.

Revenue Recognition

The Company uses the revenue recognition guidance established by ASC 606, "Revenue From Contracts With Customers" ("ASC 606"). When an agreement falls under the scope of other standards, such as ASC 808, *Collaborative Arrangements* ("ASC 808"), the Company will apply the recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure guidance in ASC 606 to the performance obligations in the agreements if those performance obligations are with a customer. Revenue recognized by analogizing to ASC 606, is recorded as collaboration revenue on the statements of operations.

The majority of the Company's revenue results from its license and collaboration agreements associated with the development of investigational drug products. The Company accounts for a contract when it has approval and commitment from both parties, the rights of the parties are identified, payment terms are identified, the contract has commercial substance and collectability of consideration is probable. For each contract meeting these criteria, the Company identifies the performance obligations included within the contract. A performance obligation is a promise in a contract to transfer a distinct good or service to the customer. The Company then recognizes revenue under each contract as the related performance obligations are satisfied.

The transaction price under the contract is determined based on the value of the consideration expected to be received in exchange for the transferred assets or services. Development, regulatory and sales milestones included in the Company's collaboration agreements are considered to be variable consideration. The amount of variable consideration expected to be received is included in the transaction price when it becomes probable that the milestone will be met. For contracts with multiple performance obligations, the contract's transaction price is allocated to each performance obligation using the Company's best estimate of the standalone selling price of each distinct good or service in the contract. The primary method used to estimate standalone selling price is the expected cost plus margin approach. Revenue is recognized over the related period over which the Company expects the services to be provided using a proportional performance model or a straight-line method of recognition if there is no discernable pattern over which the services will be provided.

Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The Company uses a three-tier fair value hierarchy to classify and disclose all assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis, as well as assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a non-recurring basis, in periods

subsequent to their initial measurement. The hierarchy requires the Company to use observable inputs when available, and to minimize the use of unobservable inputs, when determining fair value. The three tiers are defined as follows:

- Level 1—Observable inputs that reflect quoted market prices (unadjusted) for identical assets or liabilities in active markets;
- Level 2—Observable inputs other than quoted prices in active markets that are observable either directly or indirectly in the marketplace for identical or similar assets and liabilities; and
- Level 3—Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market data, which require the Company to develop its own assumptions.

Research and Development

Major components of research and development costs include cash compensation, depreciation expense on research and development property and equipment, costs of preclinical studies, clinical trials and related clinical manufacturing, costs of drug development, costs of materials and supplies, facilities cost, overhead costs, regulatory and compliance costs, and fees paid to consultants and other entities that conduct certain research and development activities on the Company's behalf. Research and development costs are expensed as incurred.

The Company records accruals based on estimates of the services received, efforts expended and amounts owed pursuant to contracts with numerous contract research and manufacturing organizations. In the normal course of business, the Company contracts with third parties to perform various clinical study activities in the ongoing development of potential products. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation and variation from contract to contract and may result in uneven payment flows. Payments under the contracts depend on factors such as the achievement of certain events and the completion of portions of the clinical study or similar conditions. The objective of the Company's accrual policy is to match the recording of expenses in its financial statements to the actual services received and efforts expended. As such, expense accruals related to clinical studies are recognized based on the Company's estimate of the degree of completion of the event or events specified in the specific clinical study.

The Company records nonrefundable advance payments it makes for future research and development activities as prepaid expenses. Prepaid expenses are recognized as expense in the Consolidated Statements of Operations as the Company receives the related goods or services.

Research and development costs that are reimbursed under a cost-sharing arrangement are reflected as a reduction of research and development expense.

Patent Costs

Patent costs, including related legal costs, are expensed as incurred and recorded within general and administrative operating expenses on the Consolidated Statements of Operations.

Income Taxes

From its formation on August 1, 2015, vTv Therapeutics Inc. has been subject to corporate level income taxes. Prior to July 30, 2015, the Company's predecessor entities were taxed as partnerships and all their income and deductions flowed through and were subject to tax at the partner level.

vTv Therapeutics Inc. is required to recognize deferred tax assets and liabilities for the difference between the financial reporting and tax basis of its investment in vTv LLC.

The Company's income tax expense, deferred tax assets and liabilities and reserves for unrecognized tax benefits reflect management's best assessment of estimated future taxes to be paid. The Company is subject to income taxes in both the United States and various state jurisdictions. Significant judgments and estimates are required in determining the consolidated income tax expense.

The Company accounts for income taxes under the asset and liability method, which requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events included in the financial statements. Under this method, the Company determines deferred tax assets and liabilities on the basis of differences between the financial statement and tax bases of assets and liabilities by using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which the differences are expected to reverse. The effect of a change in tax rates on deferred tax assets and liabilities is recognized in income in the period in which the enactment date occurs.

The Company recognizes deferred tax assets to the extent it believes these assets are more-likely-than-not to be realized. In making such a determination, the Company considers all available positive and negative evidence, including

future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences, projected future taxable income, tax planning strategies and recent results of operations.

The Company records uncertain tax positions on the basis of a two-step process in which (1) it determines whether it is more-likely-than-not that the tax positions will be sustained on the basis of the technical merits of the position and (2) for those tax positions meeting the more-likely-than-not recognition threshold, it recognizes the largest amount of tax benefit that is more than 50% likely to be realized upon ultimate settlement with the related tax authority.

Interest and penalties related to income taxes are included in the benefit (provision) for income taxes in the Company's Consolidated Statements of Operations. The Company has not incurred any significant interest or penalties related to income taxes in any of the periods presented.

Noncontrolling Interest

The Company records the redeemable noncontrolling interest represented by the vTv Units and the Class B Common stock at the higher of (1) its initial fair value plus accumulated earnings/losses associated with the noncontrolling interest or (2) the redemption value as of the balance sheet date. See discussion and additional detail of the redeemable noncontrolling interest at Note 13.

Segment and Geographic Information

Operating segments are defined as an enterprise's components (business activities from which it earns revenue and incurs expenses) for which discrete financial information is (1) available; and (2) is regularly reviewed by the chief operating decision maker ("CODM") in deciding how to allocate resources and in assessing performance. The Company's CODM is its President and Chief Executive Officer. The Company's business operates in one reportable segment comprised of one operating segment.

Leases

The Company determines if an arrangement is a lease at inception. Balances recognized related to operating leases are included in operating lease right-of-use assets and operating lease liabilities in the Consolidated Balance Sheets. Operating lease right-of-use assets and operating lease liabilities are recognized based on the present value of the future minimum lease payments over the lease term at commencement date. Lease terms may include options to extend or terminate the lease if it is reasonably certain that the Company will exercise the option. As most of the Company's leases do not provide an implicit rate, the Company uses its incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at the commencement date in determining the present value of future payments. The operating lease right-of-use asset also includes any lease payments made and excludes lease incentives and initial direct costs incurred. The Company has elected a practical expedient to not separate its lease and non-lease components and instead account for them as a single lease component.

Lease expense for minimum lease payments is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term. Lease payments for short-term leases are recorded to operating expense on a straight-line basis and variable lease payments are recorded in the period in which the obligation for those payments is incurred.

Share-Based Compensation

Compensation expense for share-based compensation awards issued is based on the fair value of the award at the date of grant, and compensation expense is recognized for those awards earned over the service period. The grant date fair value of stock option awards is estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing formula. Expected volatility is based on the historical volatility of the Company's common stock over the most recent period commensurate with the estimated expected term of the Company's stock options offering period which is derived from historical experience. The risk-free rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant. Due to a lack of historical exercise data, the Company estimates the expected life of its outstanding stock options using the simplified method specified under Staff Accounting Bulletin Topic 14.D.2.

In the event the participant's employment by or engagement with (as a director or otherwise) the Company terminates before exercise of the options granted, the stock options granted to the participant shall immediately expire and all rights to purchase shares there under shall immediately cease and expire and be of no further force or effect, other than applicable exercise rights for vested shares that may extend past the termination date as provided for in the participant's applicable option award agreement. The Company entered into a retirement agreement with its former CEO Steve Holcombe in October 2021, and separation agreements with its former CEO Deepa Prasad in February 2022 and certain key employees in December 2021. The retirement and separation agreements provide for accelerated vesting and extend the exercise period for certain outstanding equity awards.

The Company entered into an employment and Inducement Agreement with its CEO Paul Sekhri, which grant Mr. Sekhri inducement awards covering an aggregate of 2,200,000 of Class A common stock earned over a service period of four years. The awards subject to the Inducement Agreement were not charged against the Plan's share reserve and are being granted outside of the Plan as an Inducement Award. Additionally, the Company entered into an employment and Options Award Agreement with its Chief Financial Officer Steven Tuch, which grants 500,000 shared-based awards earned over a service period of four years. Additionally, the Option Agreement provides Mr. Tuch the option to earn performance-based equity compensation to purchase shares of the Company's Class A common stock.

The fair value of restricted stock units ("RSU") grants are based on the market value of the Class A Common Stock on the date of grant. The Company also estimates the amount of share-based awards that are expected to be forfeited based on historical employee turnover rates.

Comprehensive Income

The Company does not have any components of other comprehensive income recorded within its Consolidated Financial Statements, and, therefore, does not separately present a statement of comprehensive income in its Consolidated Financial Statements.

Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

Fair Value Measurements: In June 2022, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2022-03 "Fair Value Measurements (Topic 820): Fair Value Measurement of Equity Securities Subject to Contractual Sale Restrictions." These amendments clarify that a contractual restriction on the sale of an equity security is not considered part of the unit of account of the equity security and, therefore, is not considered in measuring fair value. This guidance is effective for public business entities for fiscal years, including interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2023. Early adoption is permitted. The Company has assessed ASU 2022-03 and early adopted the guidance during the second quarter of 2022. The adoption did not have a material impact on the Company's Consolidated Financial Statements.

Note 3: Collaboration Agreements

G42 Purchase Agreement and Cogna Collaborative and License Agreement

The Company and G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd, a private limited company ("G42 Investments"), entered into a Common Stock Purchase Agreement (the "G42 Purchase Agreement"), pursuant to which the Company sold to G42 Investments 10,386,274 shares of the Company's Class A common stock at a price per share of approximately \$2.41, for an aggregate purchase price of \$25.0 million, which was paid (i) \$12.5 million in cash at the closing and (ii) \$12.5 million in the form of a promissory note of G42 Investments to be paid at May 31, 2023 (the "G42 Promissory Note"). As part of the G42 Purchase Agreement, G42 Investments nominated a director as appointee and the Company's board of directors approved appointing the new director to the Company's board.

G42 Investments has agreed to certain transfer restrictions (including restrictions on short sales or similar transactions) and restrictions on further acquisitions of shares, in each case subject to specified exceptions. Following the expiration of a lock up period, from the period May 31, 2022 until December 31, 2024 (or if earlier, the date of receipt of U.S. Food and Drug Administration ("FDA") approval in the U.S. for *TTP399* (the "FDA Approval") of *TTP399*), the Company has granted to G42 Investments certain shelf and piggyback registration rights with respect to those shares of Class A common stock issued to G42 Investments pursuant to the G42 Purchase Agreement, including the ability to conduct an underwritten offering to resell such shares under certain circumstances. The registration rights include customary cooperation, cut-back, expense reimbursement, and indemnification provisions.

Contemporaneously with the G42 Purchase Agreement, effective on May 31, 2022, the Company entered into a collaboration and license agreement (the "Cogna Agreement") with Cogna Technology Solutions LLC, an affiliate of G42 Investments ("Cogna"), which requires Cogna to work with the Company in performing clinical trials for the Company's *TTP399* compound (the "Licensed Product") as well as jointly creating a global development plan to develop, market, and commercialize *TTP399* in certain countries in the Middle East, Africa, and Central Asia (the "Partner Territory"). Under the terms of the Cogna Agreement, Cogna will obtain a license under certain intellectual property controlled by the Company to enable it to fulfill its obligations and exercise its rights under the Cogna agreement, including to develop and commercialize the Licensed Product in the Partner Territory, but will not have access to the various intellectual property ("IP") related to the license and *TTP399*. Specifically, the Company will share various protocols with Cogna related to conducting the clinical trials and will provide the patient dosages and placebo of *TTP399* needed to conduct the trials. .

Under the Cogna Agreement, Cogna has the right to develop and commercialize the Licensed Product in the Partner Territory at its own cost once restrictions on the use of the IP have been lifted by the Company. The Cogna Agreement determined which specific countries in the Partner Territory that Cogna may pursue development and commercialization and provides the Company with the ability to determine when Cogna can benefit from this IP through the powers granted to the Company to approve the global development plan. Further, the Company may supply at cost, or Cogna may manufacture, *TTP399* for commercial sale under terms to be agreed upon by the parties at a later date.

Separately, the Company will conduct its clinical trials for *TTP399* outside of the Partner Territory at its own cost. The results of each party's clinical trials will be combined by the Company to seek FDA approval in the United States for *TTP399*. On December 21, 2022, G42 Healthcare Technology Solutions LLC (formerly known as Cogna Technology Solutions LLC) novated its rights and obligations under the Cogna agreement to G42 Healthcare Research Technology Projects LLC ("G42 Healthcare"), an affiliate of G42 Investments. As a result of the novation, all references to Cogna herein shall be deemed to refer to G42 Healthcare

The G42 Purchase Agreement also provides for, following the receipt of FDA approval of the Licensed Product, at the option of G42 Investments, either (a) the issuance of the Company's Class A common stock (the "Milestone Shares") having an aggregate value equal to \$30.0 million or (b) the payment by the Company of \$30.0 million in cash (the "Milestone Cash Payment"). The issuance of the Milestone Shares or the payment of the Milestone Cash Payment, as applicable, are conditioned upon receipt of the FDA Approval and subject to certain limitations and conditions set forth in the G42 Purchase Agreement. There can be no assurance that the FDA Approval will be granted or as to the timing thereof.

Once commercialization takes place in the Partner Territory, the Company will receive royalties in the single digits from Cogna on the net sales of the Licensed Product for a period of at least ten years after the first commercial sale of the Licensed Product in the Partner Territory.

Common stock is generally recorded at fair value at the date of issuance. In determining the fair value of the Class A common stock issued to G42 Investments, the Company considered the closing price of the common stock on the effective date. The Company did not make an adjustment to the fair value for sale restrictions on the stock in accordance with guidance recently adopted in ASU 2022-03. See the "Recently Issued Accounting Guidance" in this 10-K for details of the ASU. Accordingly, the Company determined that cash consideration of \$5.7 million should be recorded as fair value of the Class A common stock at the effective date, utilizing the Class A common stock closing price of \$0.55 at the effective date.

A premium was paid on the Class A common stock by G42 Investments of \$18.7 million, net of a note receivable discount of \$0.6 million. This premium is determined to be the transaction price for all remaining obligations under the agreements, which will be accounted for under ASC 808 or ASC 606 based on determination of the unit of account.

The Company determined that certain commitments under the agreements are in the scope of ASC 808 as both the Company and Cogna are active participants in the clinical trials of the Licensed Product, and both are exposed to significant risks and rewards based on the success of the clinical trials and subsequent FDA approval. Cogna is determined to be a vendor of the Company during the clinical trial phase, working on the Company's behalf to complete R&D activities, and not in a customer capacity. The Company accounted for the commitments related to the clinical trials, which includes transfer of trial protocols, supply of clinical trial dosages, and collaboration on the joint development committee ("JDC") as an ASC 808 unit of account, applying the recognition and measurement principles of ASC 606 by analogy. The Company will recognize collaboration revenue for its development activities under ASC 808 over time based on the estimated period of performance.

By applying the principals in ASC 606 by analogy, the Company identified the performance obligation and considered the timing of satisfaction of the obligation to account for the pattern of revenue recognition. In order to recognize collaboration revenue, generally, the Company would begin satisfying its performance obligation and Cogna would need to be able to use and benefit from delivery of the assets or services. The performance obligation under the agreements that fall within the ASC 808 unit of account are concentrated in the clinical trials. As of December 31, 2022, the clinical trials had not commenced. Accordingly, no collaboration revenue was recognized for the ASC 808 unit of account during the year ended December 31, 2022.

The Company identified certain commitments that are in the scope of ASC 606 as Cogna's relationship is that of a customer for these commitments. The significant performance obligations that are in the scope of ASC 606 are (1) the development, commercialization and manufacturing license of the IP once restrictions on the use of the IP have been lifted by the Company and (2) a potential material right to a commercial supply agreement. The Company will recognize revenue from the development, commercial and manufacturing license at a point in time when the Company releases the restrictions on the use of the IP, which is expected to be after the Licensed Product is approved by the FDA. The Company will recognize revenue from the material right related to Cogna's ability to purchase the commercial supply at cost as Cogna purchases the commercial supply from the Company, which will occur after the completion of the initial clinical trials (if Cogna decides to

purchase the clinical supply from the Company). As a result, the Company has not recognized any revenue under the ASC 606 unit of account during the year ended December 31, 2022.

As of December 31, 2022, the Company has recognized the cash and a non-interest bearing promissory note receivable with a principal balance of \$12.5 million. The promissory note receivable was classified and accounted for under ASC 310 "*Receivables*" ("ASC 310") and was initially measured at its fair value of \$11.9 million and will be subsequently remeasured at its amortized cost through its maturity date. The Company also recorded the \$18.7 million as deferred revenue in the Consolidated Balance Sheets, as none of the underlying performance obligations had been satisfied as of and for the year ended December 31, 2022.

On February 28, 2023, the Company and G42 Investments amended the G42 Purchase Agreement and modified the G42 Promissory Note to accelerate the payment due under the note. Pursuant to the amendment, on February 28, 2023, the Company received \$12.0 million, which reflected the original amount due under the G42 Promissory Note less a 3.75% discount, in full satisfaction of the note.

Reneo License Agreement

On December 21, 2017, the Company entered into the Reneo License Agreement, under which Reneo obtained an exclusive, worldwide, sublicensable license to develop and commercialize the Company's peroxisome proliferation activated receptor delta (PPAR- δ) agonist program, including the compound *HPP593*, for therapeutic, prophylactic or diagnostic application in humans. Under the terms of the Reneo License Agreement, Reneo paid the Company an upfront cash payment of \$3.0 million. The Company is eligible to receive additional potential development, regulatory and sales-based milestone payments totaling up to \$94.5 million. In addition, Reneo is obligated to pay the Company royalty payments at mid-single to low-double digit rates, based on tiers of annual net sales of licensed products. Such royalties will be payable on a licensed product-by-licensed product and country-by-country basis until the latest of expiration of the licensed patents covering a licensed product in a country, expiration of data exclusivity rights for a licensed product in a country or a specified number of years after the first commercial sale of a licensed product in a country. As additional consideration, the Company has also received common stock and certain participation rights representing a minority equity interest in Reneo.

Pursuant to the terms of the Reneo License Agreement, the Company is required to provide technology transfer services for a defined period after the effective date. In accordance with ASC 606, the Company identified all of the performance obligations at the inception of the Reneo License Agreement. The significant obligations were determined to be the license and the technology transfer services. The Company has determined that the license and technology transfer services represent a single performance obligation because they were not capable of being distinct on their own. The transaction price has been fully allocated to this combined performance obligation.

The Company determined that there was no discernable pattern in which the technology services would be provided during the transfer services period. As such, the Company determined that the straight-line method would be used to recognize revenue over the transfer service period. As of December 31, 2019, revenue allocated to this performance obligation was fully recognized.

During the year ended December 31, 2021, \$2.0 million of revenue was recognized due to the satisfaction of a development milestone under the license agreement. This amount was fully recognized as revenue during the year ended December 31, 2021, as the related performance obligation was fully satisfied. The remaining milestone payments that the Company is eligible to receive have not been included in the transaction price as of December 31, 2022, as it is not considered probable that such payments will be received.

Huadong License Agreement

On December 21, 2017, the Company entered into a License Agreement with Huadong (the "Huadong License Agreement"), under which Huadong obtained an exclusive and sublicensable license to develop and commercialize the Company's glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist ("GLP-1r") program, including the compound *TTP273*, for therapeutic uses in humans or animals, in China and certain other Pacific Rim territories, including Australia and South Korea (collectively, the "Huadong License Territory"). Additionally, under the Huadong License Agreement, the Company obtained a non-exclusive, sublicensable, royalty-free license to develop and commercialize certain Huadong patent rights and know-how related to the Company's GLP-1r program for therapeutic uses in humans or animals outside of the Huadong License Territory. Under the terms of the Huadong License Agreement, as amended, Huadong paid the Company an initial license fee of \$8.0 million and is obligated to pay potential development and regulatory milestone payments totaling up to \$22.0 million, with an additional potential regulatory milestone of \$20.0 million if Huadong receives regulatory approval for a central nervous system indication. In addition, the Company is eligible for an additional \$50.0 million in potential sales-based

milestones, as well as royalty payments ranging from low-single to low-double digit rates, based on tiered sales of licensed products.

On January 14, 2021, the Company entered into the First Huadong Amendment which eliminated the Company's obligation to sponsor a multi-region clinical trial (the "Phase 2 MRCT"), and corresponding obligation to contribute up to \$3.0 million in support of such trial. The amendment also reduced the total potential development and regulatory milestone payments by \$3.0 million.

Prior to the First Amendment, the Company had allocated a portion of the transaction price to the obligation to sponsor and conduct a portion of the Phase 2 MRCT. Upon the removal of this performance obligation, the Company evaluated the impact of the modification under the provisions of ASC 606 and performed a reallocation of the transaction price among the remaining performance obligations. This resulted in the recognition of approximately \$1.0 million of revenue on a cumulative catch up basis during the year ended December 31, 2021. The majority of the transaction price originally allocated to the Phase 2 MRCT performance obligation was reallocated to the license and technology transfer services combined performance obligation discussed below, which had already been completed. The reallocation of the purchase price in connection with the First Huadong Amendment was made based on the relative estimated selling prices of the remaining performance obligations.

The significant performance obligations under this license agreement, as amended, were determined to be (i) the exclusive license to develop and commercialize the Company's GLP-1r program, (ii) technology transfer services related to the chemistry and manufacturing know-how for a defined period after the effective date, (iii) the Company's obligation to participate on a joint development committee (the "JDC"), and (iv) other obligations considered to be de minimis in nature.

The Company has determined that the license and technology transfer services related to the chemistry and manufacturing know-how represent a combined performance obligation because they were not capable of being distinct on their own. The Company also determined that there was no discernable pattern in which the technology transfer services would be provided during the transfer service period. As such, the Company recognized the revenue related to this combined performance obligation using the straight-line method over the transfer service period. This combined performance obligation was considered complete as of December 31, 2018. In connection with the First Huadong Amendment, the Company recognized approximately \$2.0 million and \$1.0 million of revenue related to this performance obligation during the year ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively, due to the reallocation of the transaction price among the performance obligations remaining after the First Huadong Amendment.

The Company also determined that the obligation to participate in the joint development committee (the "JDC") to oversee the development of products should be treated as a separate performance obligation. A portion of the total consideration received under the Huadong License Agreement was allocated to this performance obligation based on its estimated standalone selling price. A portion of this amount remains deferred as of December 31, 2022, and revenue will be recognized using the proportional performance model over the period of the Company's participation on the JDC. The unrecognized amount of the transaction price allocated to this performance obligation as of December 31, 2022, was de minimis. An immaterial amount of revenue was recognized for this performance obligation for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020.

The remaining milestone payments that the Company is eligible to receive have not been included in the transaction price as of December 31, 2022, as it is not considered probable that such payments will be received.

Newsora License Agreement

On May 31, 2018, the Company entered into a license agreement with Newsora Biopharma Co., Ltd., ("Newsora") (the "Newsora License Agreement"), under which Newsora obtained an exclusive and sublicensable license to develop and commercialize the Company's phosphodiesterase type 4 inhibitors ("PDE4") program, including the compound *HPP737*, in China and other Pacific Rim territories (collectively, the "Newsora License Territory"). Additionally, under the Newsora License Agreement, the Company obtained a non-exclusive, sublicensable, royalty-free license to develop and commercialize certain Newsora patent rights and know-how related to the Company's PDE4 program for therapeutic uses in humans outside of the Newsora License Territory. The Newsora License Agreement was amended in 2020 to change certain future milestone payments and patent rights (the "First Newsora Amendment"). Under the terms of the Newsora License Agreement, Newsora paid the Company an upfront cash payment of \$2.0 million. During the year ended December 31, 2019, the Company received an additional payment of \$1.0 million related to the satisfaction of a development milestone during the year. As amended, the Company is eligible to receive additional potential development, regulatory and sales-based milestone payments totaling up to \$58.5 million. In addition, Newsora is obligated to pay the Company royalty payments at high-single to low-double digit rates, based on tiers of annual net sales of licensed products. Such royalties will be payable on a licensed product-by-licensed product and country-by-country basis until the latest of expiration of the licensed patents

covering a licensed product in a country, expiration of data exclusivity rights for a licensed product in a country or a specified number of years after the first commercial sale of a licensed product in a country.

Pursuant to the terms of the Newsoara License Agreement, the Company is required to provide technology transfer services for a defined period after the effective date. In accordance with ASC 606, the Company identified all of the performance obligations at the inception of the Newsoara License Agreement. The significant obligations were determined to be the license and the technology transfer services. The Company has determined that the license and technology transfer services represent a single performance obligation because they were not capable of being distinct on their own. The transaction price has been fully allocated to this combined performance obligation and the related revenue was recognized during the year ended December 31, 2018.

During the year ended December 31, 2021, the transaction price for this performance obligation was increased by \$1.0 million due to the satisfaction of development milestones under the license agreement. This amount was fully recognized as revenue during the year ended December 31, 2021, as the related performance obligations have been fully satisfied.

The remaining milestone payments that the Company is eligible to receive have not been included in the transaction price as of December 31, 2022, as it is not considered probable that such payments will be received.

Anteris License Agreement

On December 11, 2020, the Company entered into a license agreement with Anteris Bio, Inc. (“Anteris”) (the “Anteris License Agreement”), under which Anteris obtained a worldwide, exclusive and sublicensable license to develop and commercialize the Company’s Nrf2 activator, *HPP971*.

Under the terms of the Anteris License Agreement, Anteris paid the Company an initial license fee of \$2.0 million. The Company is eligible to receive additional potential development, regulatory, and sales-based milestone payments totaling up to \$151.0 million. Anteris is also obligated to pay vTv royalty payments at a double-digit rate based on annual net sales of licensed products. Such royalties will be payable on a licensed product-by-licensed product basis until the latest of expiration of the licensed patents covering a licensed product in a country, expiration of data exclusivity rights for a licensed product in a country, or a specified number of years after the first commercial sale of a licensed product in a country. As additional consideration, the Company received preferred stock representing a minority ownership interest in Anteris.

Pursuant to the terms of the Anteris License Agreement, the Company was required to provide technology transfer services for a 30 day period after the effective date. In accordance with ASC 606, the Company identified all of the performance obligations at the inception of the Anteris License Agreement. The significant obligations were determined to be the license and the technology transfer services. The Company has determined that the license and technology transfer services represent a single performance obligation because they were not capable of being distinct on their own. The transaction price has been fully allocated to this combined performance obligation and consisted of the \$2.0 million initial license payment as well as the fair value of the equity interest received in Anteris of \$4.2 million. The revenue related to this performance obligation was fully recognized during the year ended December 31, 2020, as the technology transfer services were considered complete as of that date. No revenue was recognized related to the Anteris License Agreement during the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021.

JDRF Agreement

In August 2017, the Company entered into the JDRF Agreement to support the funding of the Simplici-T1 Study, an adaptive Phase 1b/2 study to explore the effects of *TTP399* in type 1 diabetics. The Company initiated this study in the fourth quarter of 2017. The JDRF Agreement was amended in June 2021 to provide additional funding for the Company’s mechanistic study exploring the effects of *TTP399* on ketone body formation during a period of insulin withdrawal in people with type 1 diabetes. According to the terms of the JDRF Agreement, as amended, JDRF will provide research funding of up to \$3.4 million based on the achievement of research and development milestones, with the total funding provided by JDRF not to exceed approximately one-half of the total cost of the project. Additionally, the Company has the obligation to make certain milestone payments to JDRF upon the commercialization, licensing, sale or transfer of *TTP399* as a treatment for type 1 diabetes.

Payments that the Company receives from JDRF under this agreement are recorded as restricted cash and current liabilities and recognized as an offset to research and development expense, based on the progress of the project, and only to the extent that the restricted cash is utilized to fund such development activities. As of December 31, 2022, the Company had received funding under this agreement of \$3.4 million, and research and development costs were offset by \$3.4 million.

Contract Liabilities

Contract liabilities related to the Company's collaboration agreements consisted of the following (in thousands):

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Current portion of contract liabilities	\$ 17	\$ 35
Contract liabilities, net of current portion	18,669	—
Total contract liabilities	<u>\$ 18,686</u>	<u>\$ 35</u>

Changes in short-term and long-term contract liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2022, were as follows:

	Contract Liabilities
Balance on January 1, 2022	35
Reclassification of the beginning contract liabilities to revenue, as the result of performance obligations satisfied	(18)
Consideration received in advance and not recognized as revenue	18,669
Balance on December 31, 2022	<u>\$ 18,686</u>

The change in the Company's contract liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2022, was primarily due to the deferred revenue related to the G42 Purchase Agreement.

Note 4: Share-Based Compensation

In conjunction with the Company's initial public offering ("IPO"), the board of directors of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the "Board of Directors") and sole stockholder adopted a long-term equity incentive plan, the vTv Therapeutics Inc. 2015 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan (the "Plan"). The Plan provides for the grant of stock options, restricted stock, restricted stock units and other awards based on our Class A common stock to management, other key employees, consultants and non-employee directors on terms and subject to conditions as established by our Compensation Committee. In settlement of its obligations under this plan, the Company will issue new shares of Class A common stock. Following an amendment to increase the number of shares available under the plan in 2020, the maximum number of shares of the Company's Class A common stock that has been approved and may be subject to awards under the Plan is 7.0 million, subject to adjustment in accordance with terms of the Plan.

The Company has issued non-qualified stock option awards and restricted stock units to certain employees, consultants and non-employee directors of the Company. These awards generally vest ratably over a three-year period and the option awards expire after a term of ten years from the date of grant. For the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, the Company recognized \$1.3 million, \$2.4 million and \$1.0 million, respectively of compensation expense related to share-based awards. Given that the Company has established a full valuation allowance against its deferred tax assets, the Company has recognized no tax benefit related to these awards. As of December 31, 2022, the Company had total unrecognized stock-based compensation expense of approximately \$1.9 million, which is expected to be recognized on a straight-line basis over a weighted average period of 2.4 years. The weighted average grant date fair value for all option grants during the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020 was \$0.69, \$1.23 and \$1.91 per option, respectively.

The Company entered into a retirement agreement on October 19, 2021, with its former CEO Steve Holcombe which included provisions for him to retire from full-time service as CEO as of October 19, 2021. As part of the retirement agreement, Mr. Holcombe's remaining unvested awards will continue to vest and be fully vested on December 31, 2022. In light of this change, the Company entered into an employment and Inducement Agreement with Deepa Prasad, who was appointed President and CEO as of October 19, 2021. The Inducement Agreement provided the grant of 2,498,635 options to purchase the Company's Class A common stock at a strike price of \$1.47 per share. The grants have varying service and performance vesting requirements depending on the grantee's status as an employee. On February 27, 2022, Ms. Prasad notified the Board of Directors (the "Board") of the Company of her decision to resign from her positions as Chief Executive Officer, President and Board member, effective as of March 29, 2022 ("Effective Date"). Ms. Prasad will retain 624,659 of the outstanding options previously granted to her, which will vest at the end of the 15-month period following the Effective Date. The awards subject to the Inducement Agreement were not charged against the Plan's share reserve and are being granted outside of the Plan as an Inducement Award.

The Company entered into an employment and Inducement Agreement with Paul Sekhri, who was appointed President and CEO as of August 1, 2022. The Inducement Agreement provided the grant of 2,200,000 options to purchase the

Company's Class A common stock at a strike price of \$0.79 per share. The grants have service vesting requirements depending on the grantee's status as an employee. The awards are subject to the Inducement Agreement were not charged against the Plan's share reserve and are being granted outside of the Plan as an Inducement Award.

The Company also entered into separation agreements with several other key employees in December 2021 who had a combination of unvested and vested stock options at the termination date. As a result of the retirement and separation agreements, 1,190,263 stock options to purchase shares of common stock were modified to increase the time period to exercise the options and 616,667 stock options to purchase shares of common stock were modified to accelerate vesting at the termination date. Additionally, 375,000 stock options were canceled for the year ended December, 2021, related to the separation agreements. The Company incurred \$0.5 million of additional stock compensation expense for the modifications for the year ended December 31, 2021.

The aggregate intrinsic value of the in-the-money awards outstanding as well as those exercisable as of December 31, 2022, was an insignificant amount.

The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model to calculate the fair value of stock options granted. The fair value of stock options granted was estimated using the following assumptions during the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020:

	For the Year Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Expected volatility	118.72% - 128.72%	118.75% - 122.17%	120.37% - 121.43%
Expected life of option, in years	5.2 - 6.1	5.8 - 6.0	5.7 - 6.0
Risk-free interest rate	1.59% - 4.31%	1.00% - 1.34%	0.39% - 0.53%
Expected dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%

The following table summarizes the activity related to the stock option awards for the year ended December 31, 2022 (in thousands, except per share amounts):

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price
Awards outstanding at December 31, 2021	7,056,035	\$ 3.19
Granted	4,672,333	0.80
Forfeited	(3,384,424)	2.37
Awards outstanding at December 31, 2022	8,343,944	\$ 2.18
Options exercisable at December 31, 2022	3,219,598	\$ 4.14
Weighted average remaining contractual term	6.4 Years	
Options vested and expected to vest at December 31, 2022	6,184,693	\$ 2.61
Weighted average remaining contractual term	7.8 Years	

Compensation expense related to the grants of stock options is included in research and development and general and administrative expense as follows (in thousands):

	2022	2021	2020
Research and development	\$ 406	\$ 599	\$ 348
General and administrative	866	1,757	661
Total share-based compensation expense	\$ 1,272	\$ 2,356	\$ 1,009

Note 5: Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets

Prepaid expenses and other current assets consist of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2022	2021
Prepaid insurance	\$ 755	\$ 863
Prepaid taxes	—	97
Deferred financing costs	—	135
Prepaid - other	1,782	954
Total	\$ 2,537	\$ 2,049

Note 6: Property and Equipment

Property and equipment consists of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2022	2021
Leasehold improvements	\$ 406	\$ 406
Computers and hardware	69	48
Software	80	80
Furniture and office equipment	49	49
Total property and equipment	604	583
Less: accumulated depreciation and amortization	(397)	(305)
Property and equipment, net	\$ 207	\$ 278

Depreciation expense was \$0.1 million for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020.

Note 7: Investments

In connection with the Reneo and Anteris License Agreements, the Company has received equity ownership interests of less than 20% of the voting equity of the investee. Further, the Company does not have the ability to exercise significant influence over the investees. The investments are classified as long-term investments in the Company's Consolidated Balance Sheets.

Reneo completed its initial public offering in April 2021. Prior to Reneo becoming a publicly-traded company, the Company's investment in Reneo did not have a readily determinable fair value and was measured at cost less impairment, adjusted for any changes in observable prices, under the measurement alternative. Subsequent to Reneo's initial public offering, the Company's investment in Reneo is considered to have a readily determinable fair value and, as such, is adjusted to its fair value each period with changes in fair value recognized as a component of net loss.

The Company's investment in Anteris does not have a readily determinable fair value and is measured at cost less impairment, adjusted for any changes in observable prices.

The Company's investments consist of the following:

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Equity investment with readily determinable fair value:		
Reneo common stock	\$ 1,343	\$ 4,928
Equity investment without readily determinable fair values assessed under the measurement alternative:		
Anteris preferred stock	4,245	4,245
Total	\$ 5,588	\$ 9,173

The Company received its investment in Anteris preferred stock as consideration under the Anteris License Agreement entered into on December 11, 2020. The fair value of the investment was derived from the transaction prices of other securities sold using a market approach. The investment qualifies as Level 3 under the fair value hierarchy as it was valued using unobservable inputs including volatility and risk-free rate assumptions which were 125.0% and 0.4%, respectively.

No adjustments have been made to the value of the Company's investment in Anteris since its initial measurement either due to impairment or based on observable price changes. The Company recognized an unrealized loss on its investment in Reneo of \$3.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2022. The Company recognized an unrealized gain on its investment in Reneo of \$2.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2021. These adjustments were recognized as a component of other (expense) income in the Company's Consolidated Statements of Operations.

Note 8: Accounts Payable and Accrued Expenses

Accounts payable and accrued expenses consist of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2022	2021
Accounts payable	\$ 2,461	\$ 1,876
Accrued development costs	3,572	2,790
Accrued compensation and related costs	788	3,202
Accrued other	492	155
Total	\$ 7,313	\$ 8,023

Note 9: Leases

In August 2019, the Company leased office space for its headquarters location under an operating lease. This lease commenced in November 2019 after the completion of certain tenant improvements made by the lessor. The lease includes an option to renew for a five-year term as well as an option to terminate after three years, neither of which have been recognized as part of its related right of use assets or lease liabilities as their election is not considered reasonably certain. In November 2022, the Company entered into a second amendment to the lease, (i) to reduce the square footage and (ii) to extend the lease term, which constituted a modification event under ASC 842 and, the lease classification for the asset remains as an operating lease. As a result of the remeasurement of the associated lease liabilities, the Company recognized additional right of use assets and corresponding lease liabilities of \$0.1 million. Further, the second amendment to the lease does not include any material residual value guarantee or restrictive covenants.

At December 31, 2022 and 2021, the weighted average incremental borrowing rate for operating leases held by the Company were 9.5% and 13.1%, respectively. At December 31, 2022 and 2021, the weighted average remaining lease terms for the operating leases held by the Company were 2.9 years and 3.1 years, respectively.

Maturities of lease liabilities for the Company's operating leases as of December 31, 2022, were as follows (in thousands):

2023	\$ 194
2024	194
2025	177
2026	—
2027	—
Thereafter	—
Total lease payments	565
Less: imputed interest	(73)
Present value of lease liabilities	\$ 492

Operating lease cost was \$0.2 million for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020, respectively. During the year ended December 31, 2022, cash paid for operating leases was \$0.3 million.

Note 10: Notes Payable

Notes payable consist of the following (in thousands):

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Short-term financing	224	256
Total notes payable	224	256
Less: Current portion	(224)	(256)
Total notes payable, net of current portion	\$ —	\$ —

In October 2016, the Company entered into the Loan Agreement with Horizon Technology Finance Corporation and Silicon Valley Bank, under which the Company and vTv LLC borrowed \$20.0 million. On April 1, 2020, the Company entered into an amendment to the Loan Agreement (the "Second Amendment") and on July 29, 2020, the Company entered into the Third Amendment to the Loan Agreement. These amendments extended the maturity dates of the loans and adjusted the minimum cash balance requirements and their impacts have been incorporated into these disclosures and are more fully described below.

Each loan tranche bore interest at a floating rate equal to 10.5% plus the amount by which the one-month LIBOR exceeds 0.5%.

The Company borrowed the first tranche of \$12.5 million upon close of the Loan Agreement in October 2016. The first tranche required only monthly interest payments until May 1, 2018, followed by equal monthly payments of principal plus accrued interest through the scheduled maturity date on May 1, 2020. In connection with the Third Amendment, the maturity date of the first tranche was extended to September 1, 2020. In addition, a final payment for the first tranche loan equal to \$0.8 million originally due on May 1, 2020, was extended to September 1, 2020, as part of the Third Amendment, or such earlier date specified in the Loan Agreement. The Company borrowed the second tranche of \$7.5 million in March 2017. The second tranche requires only monthly interest payments until October 1, 2018, followed by equal monthly payments of principal plus accrued interest through the scheduled maturity date on October 1, 2020. In connection with the Second Amendment, the maturity date of the second tranche was extended to January 1, 2021. In addition, a final payment for the second tranche loan equal to \$0.5 million was originally due on October 1, 2020, or such earlier date specified in the Loan Agreement. In connection with the Second Amendment, the due date for this final payment was extended to January 1, 2021, or such earlier date specified in the Loan Agreement. The total amount of the payment was increased to \$0.8 million as a result of the Second and Third Amendments. For each of the first and second tranches, the combined Second and Third Amendment required only monthly interest payments on the outstanding principal balance for the amounts due from April 1, 2020, through August 1, 2020. As amended, the remaining principal balance and final interest payment under the first tranche was paid upon maturity. Further, the Second and Third Amendments require equal monthly principal payments plus accrued interest for the second tranche beginning September 1, 2020, through the scheduled maturity on January 1, 2021. The full amount outstanding under both the first and second tranches, including the related final interest payments were paid in accordance with the scheduled maturities, with the final payment made prior to December 31, 2020.

In connection with the Loan Agreement, the Company has issued to the Lenders warrants to purchase shares of the Company's Class A common stock (the "Warrants"). On October 28, 2016, the Company issued Warrants to purchase 152,580 shares of its Class A common stock at a per share exercise price of \$6.39 per share, which aggregate exercise price represents 6.0% of the principal amount borrowed under the first tranche of the Loan Agreement and 3.0% of the principal amount available under the second tranche of the Loan Agreement. On March 24, 2017, in connection with the funding of the second tranche, the Company issued Warrants to purchase 38,006 shares of its Class A common stock at a per share exercise price of \$5.92 per share, which aggregate exercise price represents 3.0% of the principal amount of the second tranche of the Loan Agreement. In each instance, the Warrants have an exercise price equal to the lower of (a) the volume weighted average price per share of the Company's Class A common stock, as reported on the principal stock exchange on which the Company's Class A common stock is listed, for 10 trading days prior to the issuance of the applicable Warrants or (b) the closing price of a share of the Company's Class A common stock on the trading day prior to the issuance of the applicable Warrants. The Warrants will expire seven years from their date of issuance.

The Company's obligations under the Loan Agreement were secured by a first priority security interest in substantially all of its assets. As a result of the termination of the STEADFAST Study, the Company granted the Lenders a first priority security interest in all of the Company's intellectual property, subject to certain limited exceptions. The Company agreed not to pledge or otherwise encumber its intellectual property assets, subject to certain exceptions. Upon full repayment and termination of the Loan Agreement in December 2020, these security interests and pledges have been extinguished.

The Loan Agreement included customary affirmative and restrictive covenants, including, but not limited to, restrictions on the payment of dividends or other equity distributions and the incurrence of debt or liens upon the assets of the Company or its subsidiaries. The Loan Agreement did not contain any financial maintenance covenants other than a requirement to maintain a minimum cash balance from time-to-time in a deposit account pledged to secure the Loan Agreement and subject to an account control agreement. The Loan Agreement included customary events of default, including payment defaults, covenant defaults, and material adverse change default. Upon full repayment and termination of the Loan Agreement in December 31, 2020, the associated covenants terminated.

The Company recorded interest expense related to the Loan Agreement of \$0.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2020. The Company did not recognize any interest expense related to the Loan Agreement during the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, as the Loan Agreement was paid in full and terminated during December 2020.

Note 11: Commitments and Contingencies

Legal Matters

From time to time, the Company is involved in various legal proceedings arising in the normal course of business. If a specific contingent liability is determined to be probable and can be reasonably estimated, the Company accrues and discloses the amount. The Company is not currently a party to any material legal proceedings.

Novo Nordisk

In February 2007, the Company entered into an Agreement Concerning Glucokinase Activator Project with Novo Nordisk A/S (the “Novo License Agreement”) whereby the Company obtained an exclusive, worldwide, sublicensable license under certain Novo Nordisk intellectual property rights to discover, develop, manufacture, have manufactured, use and commercialize products for the prevention, treatment, control, mitigation or palliation of human or animal diseases or conditions. As part of this license grant, the Company obtained certain worldwide rights to Novo Nordisk’s GKA program, including rights to preclinical and clinical compounds such as *TTP399*. This agreement was amended in May 2019 to create milestone payments applicable to certain specific and non-specific areas of therapeutic use. Under the terms of the Novo License Agreement, the Company has additional potential developmental and regulatory milestone payments totaling up to \$9.0 million for approval of a product for the treatment of type 1 diabetes, \$50.5 million for approval of a product for the treatment of type 2 diabetes, or \$115.0 million for approval of a product in any other indication. The Company may also be obligated to pay an additional \$75.0 million in potential sales-based milestones, as well as royalty payments, at mid-single digit royalty rates, based on tiered sales of commercialized licensed products. During the year ended December 31, 2021, the Company made a payment of \$2.0 million related to the satisfaction of the milestone to complete the phase 2 trials for *TTP399* under this agreement. No such payments were made during the years ended December 31, 2022, or 2020.

Note 12: Stockholders’ Equity

On July 29, 2015, the Company amended and restated its certificate of incorporation to authorize 100,000,000 shares of Class A common stock, 100,000,000 shares of Class B common stock and 50,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share.

On May 4, 2021, the Company filed an amendment to its Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the “Charter Amendment”) to increase the number of shares of Class A common stock that the Company is authorized to issue from 100,000,000 shares of Class A common stock to 200,000,000 shares of Class A common stock, representing an increase of 100,000,000 shares of authorized Class A common stock, with a corresponding increase in the total authorized common stock, which includes Class A common stock and Class B common stock, from 200,000,000 to 300,000,000, and a corresponding increase in the total authorized capital stock, which includes common stock and preferred stock, from 250,000,000 shares to 350,000,000 shares.

Holders of Class A common stock and Class B common stock will be entitled to one vote for each share held on all matters submitted to stockholders for their vote or approval. The holders of Class A common stock and Class B common stock will vote together as a single class on all matters submitted to stockholders for their vote or approval, except with respect to the amendment of certain provisions of the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation that would alter or change the powers, preferences or special rights of the Class B common stock so as to affect them adversely, which amendments must be approved by a majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of the shares affected by the amendment, voting as a separate class, or as otherwise required by applicable law. The voting power of the outstanding Class B common stock (expressed as a percentage of the total voting power of all common stock) will be equal to the percentage of vTv Units not held by the Company. Holders of Class B common stock are not entitled to receive dividends and will not be entitled to receive any distributions upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company.

G42 Investments Transaction

On May 31, 2022, the Company and G42 Investments entered into the G42 Purchase Agreement (see Note 3), pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell to G42 Investments 10,386,274 shares of the Company's Class A common stock at a price per share of approximately \$2.41, for an aggregate purchase price of \$25.0 million, consisting of (i) \$12.5 million in cash at the closing of the transaction and (ii) \$12.5 million in the form of a promissory note of G42 Investments to be paid at the one-year anniversary of the execution of the G42 Purchase Agreement (the "G42 Promissory Note"). On February 28, 2023, the Company and G42 Investments amended the G42 Purchase Agreement and modified the G42 Promissory Note to accelerate the payment due under the note. Pursuant to the amendment, on February 28, 2023, the Company received \$12.0 million, which reflected the original amount due under the G42 Promissory Note less a 3.75% discount, in full satisfaction of the note.

CinPax and CinRx Transaction

On July 22, 2022 (the "Transaction Date"), the Company entered into the CinRx Purchase Agreement with CinPax and CinRx, pursuant to which the Company agreed to sell to CinPax 4,154,549 shares of the Company's Class A common stock at a price per share of approximately \$2.41, for an aggregate purchase price of \$10.0 million, which was paid (i) \$6.0 million in cash at the closing of the transaction and (ii) \$4.0 million in the form of a non-interest-bearing promissory note with CinPax and was paid to the Company on November 22, 2022. The CinRx Purchase Agreement provides CinPax the right to nominate a director to be approved on vTv's Board of Directors and a board observer, which was subsequently approved by the Company's board.

Common stock is generally recorded at fair value at the date of issuance. In determining the fair value of the Class A common stock issued to CinPax, the Company considered the closing price of the common stock on the Transaction Date. The Company did not make an adjustment to the fair value for sale restrictions on the stock in accordance with guidance recently adopted in ASU 2022-03. See the "Recently Issued Accounting Guidance" in this 10-K for details of the ASU. Accordingly, the Company determined that cash consideration of \$3.0 million should be recorded as fair value of the Class A common stock at the effective date, utilizing the Class A common stock closing price of \$0.72 at the effective date.

The CinRx Purchase Agreement also provides CinRx warrants to purchase up to 1,200,000 shares of common stock at an initial exercise price of approximately \$0.72 per share (the "CinRx Warrants"). The CinRx Warrants were initially measured at fair value of \$0.4 million using the Black-Scholes option model at the time of issuance and will be recorded in Warrant liability related party in the Consolidated Balance Sheets and will be subsequently remeasured at fair value through earnings on a recurring basis. (see Note 19)

The CinRx Warrants will become exercisable by CinRx only if (i) the Company receives approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration ("FDA Approval") to market and distribute the pharmaceutical product containing the Company's proprietary candidate, *TTP399* (the "Product"), or (ii) the Company is acquired by a third party, sells all or substantially all of its assets related to the Product to a third party or grants a third party an exclusive license to develop, commercialize and manufacture the Product in the United States. If neither of these events happen within five years of the date of the issuance of the CinRx Warrants, the CinRx Warrants will expire and not be exercisable by CinRx. The exercise price of the CinRx Warrants and the number of shares issuable upon exercise of the CinRx Warrants are subject to adjustments in accordance with the terms of the CinRx Warrants.

Additionally, in conjunction with the CinRx Purchase Agreement the Company and CinRx entered into a Master Service Agreement ("CinRx MSA") whereby CinRx provides the Company with consulting, preclinical and clinical trial services, as enumerated in project proposals negotiated between the Company and CinRx from time to time. (see Note 14)

The Company did not identify any other promises in the CinRx Purchase Agreement (aside from the issuance of common shares and the CinRx Warrants) and determined since there is no value ascribed to the CinRx MSA, the right to appoint a member and observer to the board of directors, that the remaining unallocated amount meets the definition of contributed equity and represents the amount in excess of par.

ATM Offering

In April 2020, the Company entered into the Sales Agreement with Cantor as the sales agent, pursuant to which the Company may offer and sell, from time to time, through Cantor, shares of its Class A common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, having an aggregate offering price of up to \$13.0 million by any method deemed to be an "at the market offering" as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act (the "ATM Offering"). The shares are offered and sold pursuant to the Company's shelf registration statement on Form S-3.

On January 14, 2021 and June 25, 2021, the Company filed a prospectus supplement in connection with the ATM Offering to increase the size of the at-the-market offering pursuant to which the Company may offer and sell, from time to time, through or to Cantor, as sales agent or principal, shares of the Company's Class A common stock, by an aggregate offering price of \$5.5 million and \$50.0 million, respectively.

During the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020, the Company sold 8,929,147 and 5,480,941 shares, respectively of Class A common stock under the ATM Offering at then-market prices for total gross proceeds of approximately \$18.2 million and \$13.0 million, respectively. After offering costs and sales commissions owed in connection with the ATM Offering, the Company's aggregate net proceeds for the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020 were approximately \$17.7 million and \$12.5 million, respectively.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company did not sell any shares under the ATM Offering.

Lincoln Park Capital Transaction

On November 24, 2020, the Company entered into the LPC Purchase Agreement and a registration rights agreement (the "Registration Rights Agreement"), pursuant to which the Company has the right to sell to Lincoln Park shares of the Company's Class A common stock having an aggregate value of up to \$47.0 million, subject to certain limitations and conditions set forth in the LPC Purchase Agreement. The Company will control the timing and amount of any sales of shares to Lincoln Park pursuant to the Purchase Agreement. The Company filed a registration statement to register 5,331,306 shares which became effective on December 8, 2020.

As a result, on November 24, 2020, 425,725 newly issued shares of the Company's common stock, equal to 1.5% percent of the \$47.0 million availability, were issued to Lincoln Park as consideration for Lincoln Park's commitment to purchase shares of the Company's Class A common stock under the agreement. Upon effectiveness of the registration statement, 963,855 newly issued shares of Class A common stock, valued at \$2.08 per share, were sold to Lincoln Park in an initial purchase for an aggregate gross purchase price of \$2.0 million in 2020. During 2021, 3,941,726 shares of Class A common stock were sold to Lincoln Park for an aggregate gross purchase price of \$9.1 million.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company did not sell any shares under the LPC Purchase Agreement.

Over the 36-month term of the LPC Purchase Agreement, for up to an aggregate amount of \$47.0 million of shares of Class A common stock (subject to certain limitations and conditions), the Company has the right, but not the obligation, from time to time, in its sole discretion, to direct Lincoln Park to purchase up to 250,000 shares per day (the "Regular Purchase Share Limit") of the Class A common stock (each such purchase, a "Regular Purchase"). The Regular Purchase Share Limit will increase to 275,000 shares per day if the closing price of the Class A common stock on the applicable purchase date is not below \$4.00 per share and will further increase to 300,000 shares per day if the closing price of the Class A common stock on the applicable purchase date is not below \$5.00 per share. In any case, Lincoln Park's maximum obligation under any single Regular Purchase will not exceed \$2.0 million. The purchase price for shares of Class A common stock to be purchased by Lincoln Park under a Regular Purchase will be equal to the lower of (in each case, subject to the adjustments described in the LPC Purchase Agreement): (i) the lowest sale price for the Class A common stock on the applicable purchase date and (ii) the arithmetic average of the three lowest closing sales prices for the Class A common stock during the 10 consecutive trading days prior to the purchase date.

If the Company directs Lincoln Park to purchase the maximum number of shares of Class A common stock that the Company may sell in a Regular Purchase, then in addition to such Regular Purchase, and subject to certain conditions and limitations in the LPC Purchase Agreement, the Company may direct Lincoln Park to make an "accelerated purchase" and an "additional accelerated purchase", each of an additional number of shares of Class A common stock which may not exceed the lesser of: (i) 300% of the number of shares purchased pursuant to the corresponding Regular Purchase and (ii) 30% of the total number of shares of the Class A common stock traded during a specified period on the applicable purchase date as set forth in the LPC Purchase Agreement. The purchase price for such shares will be the lesser of (i) 97% of the volume weighted average price of the Class A common stock over a certain portion of the date of sale as set forth in the LPC Purchase Agreement and (ii) the closing sale price of the Class A common stock on the date of sale (an "Accelerated Purchase"). Under certain circumstances and in accordance with the LPC Purchase Agreement, the Company may direct Lincoln Park to purchase shares in multiple Accelerated Purchases on the same trading day.

The LPC Purchase Agreement also prohibits the Company from directing Lincoln Park to purchase any shares of its Class A common stock if those shares, when aggregated with all other shares of Class A common stock then beneficially owned by Lincoln Park and its affiliates, would result in Lincoln Park and its affiliates having beneficial ownership, at any single point in time, of more than 9.99% of the then total outstanding shares of Class A common stock as calculated pursuant to Section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and Rule 13d-3 thereunder.

Under applicable rules of the Nasdaq Global Select Market, the Company may not issue or sell to Lincoln Park under the LPC Purchase Agreement more than 19.99% of the shares of the Class A common stock outstanding immediately prior to the execution of the LPC Purchase Agreement (the “Exchange Cap”) (or 14,768,682 shares, based on 73,880,351 shares outstanding immediately prior to the execution of the LPC Purchase Agreement), unless (i) stockholder approval is obtained or (ii) the issuances and sales of Class A common stock pursuant to the LPC Purchase Agreement are not deemed to be “below market” in accordance with the applicable rules of Nasdaq.

The LPC Purchase Agreement does not limit the Company’s ability to raise capital from other sources at its sole discretion, except that, subject to certain exceptions, the Company may not enter into another “equity line” or similar transaction.

The LPC Purchase Agreement and Registration Rights Agreement each contain customary representations, warranties, and agreements of the Company and Lincoln Park, indemnification rights and other obligations of the parties. The offering of Class A common stock pursuant to the LPC Purchase Agreement will terminate on the date that all shares offered by the LPC Purchase Agreement have been sold or, if earlier, the expiration or termination of the LPC Purchase Agreement. The Company has the right to terminate the LPC Purchase Agreement at any time, without fee, penalty or cost to the Company.

The net proceeds under the LPC Purchase Agreement to the Company will depend on the frequency and prices at which shares of Class A common stock are sold to Lincoln Park. Actual sales of shares of Class A common stock to Lincoln Park under the LPC Purchase Agreement and the amount of such net proceeds will depend on a variety of factors to be determined by the Company from time to time, including (among others) market conditions, the trading price of the Class A common stock and determinations by the Company as to other available and appropriate sources of funding for the Company. Lincoln Park has covenanted not to cause or engage in any manner whatsoever, any direct or indirect short selling or hedging of Class A common stock.

Letter Agreement Warrants

The Company had previously entered into the Letter Agreements with MacAndrews. Under the terms of the Letter Agreements, the Company has or had the right to sell to MacAndrews shares of its Class A common stock at a specified price per share, and MacAndrews has or had the right (exercisable up to three times) to require the Company to sell to it shares of Class A common stock at the same price. In addition, in connection with and as a commitment fee for the entrance into certain of these Letter Agreements, the Company also issued MacAndrews warrants (the “Letter Agreement Warrants”) to purchase additional shares of the Company’s Class A common stock. Certain terms of each of these Letter Agreements are set forth in Note 14.

The Letter Agreement Warrants were recorded as warrant liability, related party within the Company’s Consolidated Balance Sheets based on their fair value. The issuance of the Letter Agreement Warrants was considered to be a cost of equity recorded as a reduction to additional paid-in capital. During the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020 the Company recognized income/(expense) of \$0.9 million, \$1.6 million and \$(0.3) million, respectively, related to the change in fair value of the Letter Agreement Warrants. These amounts were recognized as a component of other income (expense), related party in the Consolidated Statements of Operations.

Fair value of the Letter Agreement Warrants was calculated as of their issuance date using the methods described in Note 19 using the following assumptions:

	<u>December 5, 2017</u>	<u>July 30, 2018</u>	<u>December 11, 2018</u>	<u>September 26, 2019</u>	<u>December 23, 2019</u>
Expected volatility	90.00%	95.29%	104.46%	110.35%	110.41%
Expected life of option, in years	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0
Risk-free interest rate	2.80%	2.94%	2.77%	1.65%	1.84%
Expected dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%

Loan Agreement Warrants

On October 28, 2016, the Company entered into the Loan Agreement as discussed in Note 10. In connection with the Loan Agreement, the Company issued to the Lenders Warrants to purchase a total of 152,580 shares of the Company’s Class A common stock at an exercise price of \$6.39 per share. Additionally, upon funding of the second tranche on March 24, 2017, the Company issued Warrants to purchase 38,006 shares of its Class A common stock at a per share exercise price of \$5.92 per share, which aggregate exercise price represents 3.0% of the amount available under the second tranche of the Loan Agreement. The Warrants will expire seven years from their date of issuance.

Note 13: Redeemable Noncontrolling Interest

The Company is subject to the Exchange Agreement with respect to the vTv Units representing the outstanding 22.1% noncontrolling interest in vTv LLC (see Note 1). The Exchange Agreement requires the surrender of an equal number of vTv Units and Class B common stock for (i) shares of Class A common stock on a one-for-one basis or (ii) cash (based on the fair market value of the Class A common stock as determined pursuant to the Exchange Agreement), at the Company's option (as the managing member of vTv LLC), subject to customary conversion rate adjustments for stock splits, stock dividends and reclassifications. The exchange value is determined based on a 20 day volume weighted average price of the Class A common stock as defined in the Exchange Agreement, subject to customary conversion rate adjustments for stock splits, stock dividends and reclassifications.

The redeemable noncontrolling interest is recognized at the higher of (1) its initial fair value plus accumulated earnings/losses associated with the noncontrolling interest or (2) the redemption value as of the balance sheet date. At December 31, 2022 and 2021, the redeemable noncontrolling interest was recorded based on the redemption value as of the balance sheet date of \$16.6 million and \$25.0 million, respectively.

Changes in the Company's ownership interest in vTv LLC while the Company retains its controlling interest in vTv LLC are accounted for as equity transactions, and the Company is required to adjust noncontrolling interest and equity for such changes. The following is a summary of net income attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc. and transfers to noncontrolling interest:

	2022	December 31, 2021	2020
Net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc. common shareholders	\$ (19,164)	\$ (12,987)	\$ (8,499)
Increase in vTv Therapeutics Inc. accumulated deficit for purchase of LLC Units as a result of common stock issuances	(1,061)	(5,084)	(8,943)
Change from net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc. common shareholders and transfers to noncontrolling interest	<u>\$ (20,225)</u>	<u>\$ (18,071)</u>	<u>\$ (17,442)</u>

Note 14: Related-Party Transactions***MacAndrews & Forbes Incorporated***

MacAndrews directly or indirectly controls 23,084,267 shares of Class B common stock. Further, as of December 31, 2022, MacAndrews directly or indirectly holds 36,519,212 shares of the Company's Class A common stock. As a result, MacAndrews' holdings represent approximately 57.0% of the combined voting power of the Company's outstanding common stock.

The Company has entered into several agreements with MacAndrews or its affiliates as further detailed below:

Letter Agreements

The Company had previously entered into the Letter Agreements with MacAndrews. Under the terms of the Letter Agreements, during the one year commitment period beginning on the date of each Letter Agreement, the Company had the right to sell to MacAndrews shares of its Class A common stock at a specified price per share, and MacAndrews had the right (exercisable up to three times) to require the Company to sell to it shares of Class A common stock at the same price. The commitment period of each of the Letter Agreements has now expired. In addition, in connection with and as a commitment fee for the entrance into certain of these Letter Agreements, the Company also issued MacAndrews warrants (the "Letter Agreement Warrants") to purchase additional shares of the Company's Class A common stock.

Certain terms of these Letter Agreements are set forth in the tables below:

	December 5, 2017 Letter Agreement	July 30 11, 2018 Letter Agreement	December 11, 2018 Letter Agreement	March 18, 2019 Letter Agreement	September 26, 2019 Letter Agreement	December 23, 2019 Letter Agreement
Aggregate dollar value to be sold under agreement	\$10.0 million	\$10.0 million	\$10.0 million	\$9.0 million	\$10.0 million	\$10.0 million
Specified purchase price per share	\$ 4.38	\$ 1.33	\$ 1.84	\$ 1.65	\$ 1.46	\$ 1.60
Expiration date of letter agreement	December 5, 2018	July 30, 2019	December 11, 2019	March 18, 2020	September 26, 2020	December 23, 2020
Shares available to be issued under related warrants	198,267	518,654	340,534	—	400,990	365,472
Exercise price of related warrants	\$ 5.04	\$ 1.53	\$ 2.12	\$ —	\$ 1.68	\$ 1.84
Expiration date of related warrants	December 5, 2024	July 30, 2025	December 11, 2025		September 26, 2026	December 23, 2026
Total shares issued as of December 31, 2022	2,283,105	7,518,797	5,434,783	5,454,546	6,849,316	6,250,000
Remaining shares to be issued as of December 31, 2022			—	—	—	—

Each of the December 5, 2017 and July 30, 2018 Letter Agreements resulted in a deemed capital contribution to the Company as the fair value of the financial instrument received by the Company exceeded the fair value of those financial instruments issued to MacAndrews. The December 11, 2018, March 18, 2019, September 26, 2019, and December 23, 2019 Letter Agreements resulted in a deemed distribution to MacAndrews as the fair value of the financial instruments issued to MacAndrews exceeded the fair value of the financial instrument received by the Company. This deemed distribution has been reflected as a reduction to the net loss attributable to common shareholders of vTv Therapeutics Inc. for computing net loss per share.

Exchange Agreement

Pursuant to the terms of the Exchange Agreement, but subject to the Amended and Restated LLC Agreement of vTv Therapeutics LLC, the vTv Units (along with a corresponding number of shares of the Class B common stock) are exchangeable for (i) shares of the Class A common stock on a one-for-one basis or (ii) cash (based on the fair market value of the Company's Class A common stock as determined pursuant to the Exchange Agreement), at the Company's option (as the managing member of vTv Therapeutics LLC), subject to customary conversion rate adjustments for stock splits, stock dividends and reclassifications. Any decision to require an exchange for cash rather than shares of Class A common stock will ultimately be determined by the entire Board of Directors. As of December 31, 2022, MacAndrews has not exchanged any shares under the provisions of this agreement.

Tax Receivable Agreement

The Tax Receivable Agreement among the Company, M&F TTP Holdings Two LLC, as successor in interest to vTv Therapeutics Holdings ("M&F") and M&F TTP Holdings LLC provides for the payment by the Company to M&F (or certain of its transferees or other assignees) of 85% of the amount of cash savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state and local income tax or franchise tax that the Company actually realizes (or, in some circumstances, the Company is deemed to realize) as a result of (a) the exchange of Class B common stock, together with the corresponding number of vTv Units, for shares of the Company's Class A common stock (or for cash), (b) tax benefits related to imputed interest deemed to be paid by the Company as a result of the Tax Receivable Agreement and (c) certain tax benefits attributable to payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement. As no shares have been exchanged by MacAndrews pursuant to the Exchange Agreement (discussed above), the Company has not recognized any liability nor has it made any payments pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement as of December 31, 2022.

Investor Rights Agreement

The Company is party to an investor rights agreement with M&F, as successor in interest to vTv Therapeutics Holdings (the “Investor Rights Agreement”). The Investor Rights Agreement provides M&F with certain demand, shelf and piggyback registration rights with respect to its shares of Class A common stock and also provides M&F with certain governance rights, depending on the size of its holdings of Class A common stock. Under the Investor Rights Agreement, M&F was initially entitled to nominate a majority of the members of the Board of Directors and designate the members of the committees of the Board of Directors.

G42 Investments

On May 31, 2022, the Company entered into a common stock purchase agreement with G42 Investments pursuant to which the Company sold to G42 Investments 10,386,274 shares of the Company’s Class A common stock at a price per share of approximately \$2.41, for an aggregate purchase price of \$25.0 million, which was paid (i) \$12.5 million in cash at the closing and (ii) \$12.5 million in the form of a promissory note of G42 Investments to be paid on May 31, 2023 (the “G42 Promissory Note”). As part of the G42 Purchase Agreement, G42 Investments put forward a director as appointee and the Company’s board of directors appointed the new director to the Company’s board on July 11, 2022. On February 28, 2023, the Company and G42 Investments entered into an amendment of the common stock purchase agreement pursuant to which G42 Investments agreed to accelerate payment of the amount due under the promissory note. On February 28, 2023, the Company received \$12.0 million from G42 Investments, which represented a 3.75% discount to the full amount due under the promissory note, in full and final satisfaction of the promissory note.

CinRx Pharma, LLC

Master Services Agreement

On July 22, 2022, the Company entered into a Master Services Agreement with CinRx Pharma, LLC (“CinRx”) (the “CinRx MSA”). Under the CinRx MSA, CinRx provides the Company with consulting and clinical trial services, as enumerated in project proposals negotiated between the Company and CinRx from time to time. As of October 10, 2022, the Company has agreed to pay CinRx fees of up to \$0.2 million per month until approximately December 2024 in respect of ongoing agreed project proposals under the CinRx MSA, plus out-of-pocket expenses incurred by CinRx on the Company’s behalf. Dr. Jonathan Isaacsohn, who was appointed as chair of the Company’s board of directors on August 9, 2022, is the President and Chief Executive Officer of CinRx. CinPax, LLC, a subsidiary of CinRx, currently holds 4,154,549 shares of the Company’s Class A common stock.

Note 15: Employee Benefit Plan

The Company has a 401(k)-retirement plan in which all of its full-time employees are eligible to participate. The plan provides for the Company to make discretionary 50% matching contributions up to a maximum of 6% of employees’ eligible compensation. The Company contributed \$0.1 million to the plan for each of the years ended December 31, 2021 and 2020.

The Company contributed a de minimis amount to the plan for the year ended December 31, 2022.

Note 16: Income Taxes

From August 1, 2015, vTv Therapeutics Inc. has been subject to U.S. federal income taxes as well as state taxes. The Company recorded an income tax provision of \$0.2 million and \$0.1 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively, representing foreign withholding taxes incurred in connection with payments received under license agreements with foreign entities. The Company did not record an income tax provision for the year ended December 31, 2020.

As discussed in Note 14, the Company is party to a tax receivable agreement with a related party which provides for the payment by the Company to M&F (or certain of its transferees or other assignees) of 85% of the amount of cash savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state and local income tax or franchise tax that the Company actually realizes (or, in some circumstances, the Company is deemed to realize) as a result of certain transactions. As no transactions have occurred which would trigger a liability under this agreement, the Company has not recognized any liability related to this agreement as of December 31, 2022.

In August 2022, the Inflation Reduction Act (“IRA”) and CHIPS and Science Act (“CHIPS Act”) were both enacted. This new legislation includes the implementation of a new corporate alternative minimum tax, an excise tax on stock buybacks, and tax incentives for energy and climate initiatives, among other provisions. The income tax provisions of the

IRA or the CHIPS Act had limited applicability to the Company and did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

On March 27, 2020, the Coronavirus Aid, Relief and Economic Security Act ("CARES Act") was enacted in response to COVID-19 pandemic. Under ASC 740, the effects of changes in tax rates and laws are recognized in the period which the new legislation is enacted. The CARES Act made various tax law changes including among other things (i) increased the limitation under IRC Section 163(j) for 2019 and 2020 to permit additional expensing of interest, (ii) enacted a technical correction so that qualified improvement property can be immediately expensed under IRC Section 168(k), (iii) made modifications to the federal net operating loss rules including permitting federal net operating losses incurred in 2018, 2019, and 2020 to be carried back to the five preceding taxable years in order to generate a refund of previously paid income taxes, and (iv) enhanced recoverability of AMT tax credits. Given the Company's full valuation allowance position, the CARES Act did not have a material impact on the financial statements.

A reconciliation of the U.S. statutory income tax rate to the Company's effective tax rate is as follows (in thousands):

	December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
U.S. statutory tax benefit	\$ (5,223)	\$ (3,699)	\$ (2,688)
Partnership income (federal) not subject to tax to the Company	1,241	996	904
Foreign withholding tax	158	91	—
State taxes (net of federal benefit)	28	(14)	(13)
Research and development tax credit	(172)	(173)	(138)
Other	40	10	75
Change in valuation allowance	4,128	2,904	1,860
Provision for income taxes	\$ 200	\$ 115	\$ —
Effective income tax rate	(0.8)%	(0.7)%	— %

Significant components of our net deferred tax assets/(liabilities) are as follows (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2022	2021
Deferred tax assets:		
Net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 20,314	\$ 20,909
R&D Tax Credit carryforwards	1,931	1,755
Investment in partnerships	2,202	(2,353)
Charitable contributions	3	11
Total deferred tax assets	24,450	20,322
Valuation allowance	(24,450)	(20,322)
Net deferred tax assets	\$ —	\$ —

The Company assesses the available positive evidence and negative evidence to estimate whether sufficient future taxable income will be generated to permit use of existing deferred tax assets. A significant piece of objective negative evidence evaluated was the Company's recent operating losses. Such objective evidence limits the ability to consider other subjective evidence, such as forecasts of profitability. Based on the weight of objective evidence, including cumulative pre-tax losses in recent years, the Company concluded that its deferred tax assets were not realizable on a more-likely-than-not basis and recorded a full valuation allowance. During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company's valuation allowance increased by \$4.1 million.

The Company has federal net operating loss carryforwards of \$93.4 million that will be available to offset future taxable income. Approximately, \$37.5 million of these carryforwards expire in varying amounts starting in 2035 to 2037, if not utilized and are available to offset 100% of future taxable income. The remaining \$55.9 million may be carried forward indefinitely but are only available to offset 80% of future taxable income. The Company has federal research and development tax credits of \$1.9 million which expire in varying amounts starting in 2035 to 2040.

The Company applies applicable authoritative guidance which prescribes a comprehensive model for the manner in which a company should recognize, measure, present and disclose in its financial statements all material uncertain tax positions that the Company has taken or expects to take on a tax return. As of December 31, 2022, the Company had no uncertain tax positions. There are no uncertain tax positions for which it is reasonably possible that the total amount of unrecognized tax benefits will significantly increase or decrease within twelve months of December 31, 2022.

The Company files U.S. federal, California, New York, North Carolina and Virginia tax returns. The earliest open tax years that are still subject to examination by the IRS and the aforementioned state tax authorities are 2017 to 2022.

Note 17: Restructuring

In October 2021 the Company entered into a retirement and consulting agreement with its former CEO Stephen Holcombe where he will transition to the role of Strategic Advisor to the CEO until December 31, 2022. As of December 31, 2022, the Company completed its cash payment obligations under the retirement and consulting agreement for Mr. Holcombe. The Company made cash payments under the retirement and consulting agreement of \$0.6 million and \$0.1 million during the year ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. In addition, the Company recorded \$0.5 million and \$0.2 million in severance and consulting fees respectively during the year ended December 31, 2021, on the Company's Consolidated Statements of Operations.

In December 2021, the Company announced a strategic decision to prioritize the development of its lead program *TTP399*, a novel, oral, liver-selective glucokinase activator. This decision included a reduction in the Company's workforce affecting approximately 65% of its employees, and as a result the Company recognized severance and benefits costs of \$1.6 million on the Consolidated Statement of Operations during the year ended December 31, 2021. The related expense of \$0.7 million and \$0.9 million has been recognized as a component of research and development and general and administrative expense respectively, within the Consolidated Statements of Operations during the year ended December 31, 2021, based on the responsibilities of the impacted employees. The Company completed its cash payment obligations and made cash payments for severance and benefits costs of \$1.5 million and \$0.1 million during the year ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively.

Note 18: Net Loss per Share

Basic loss per share is computed by dividing net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc. by the weighted average number of shares of Class A common stock outstanding during the period. Diluted loss per share is computed giving effect to all potentially dilutive shares. Diluted loss per share for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020 is the same as basic loss per share as the inclusion of potentially issuable shares would be antidilutive.

A reconciliation of the numerator and denominator used in the calculation of basic and diluted net loss per share of Class A common stock is as follows (amounts in thousands, except per share amounts):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Numerator:			
Net loss	\$ (25,073)	\$ (17,731)	\$ (12,802)
Less: Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interests	(5,909)	(4,744)	(4,303)
Net loss attributable to vTv Therapeutics Inc.	(19,164)	(12,987)	(8,499)
Net loss attributable to common shareholders of vTv Therapeutics Inc., basic and diluted	\$ (19,164)	\$ (12,987)	\$ (8,499)
Denominator:			
Weighted average vTv Therapeutics Inc. Class A common stock, basic and diluted	74,876,200	60,732,636	47,137,917
Net loss per share of vTv Therapeutics Inc. Class A common stock, basic and diluted	\$ (0.26)	\$ (0.21)	\$ (0.18)

Potentially dilutive securities not included in the calculation of dilutive net loss per share are as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2022	2021	2020
Class B common stock ⁽¹⁾	23,093,860	23,093,860	23,094,221
Common stock options granted under the Plan	8,343,944	7,056,035	4,453,357
Common stock warrants	3,214,503	2,014,503	2,014,503
Total	<u>34,652,307</u>	<u>32,164,398</u>	<u>29,562,081</u>

- (1) Shares of Class B common stock do not share in the Company's earnings and are not participating securities. Accordingly, separate presentation of loss per share of Class B common stock under the two-class method has not been provided. Each share of Class B common stock (together with a corresponding vTv Unit) is exchangeable for one share of Class A common stock.

Note 19: Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The carrying amount of certain of the Company's financial instruments, including cash and cash equivalents, net accounts receivable, note receivable, accounts payable and other accrued liabilities approximate fair value due to their short-term nature.

The Company determined that the promissory note receivable was level 2 and the fair value measurement was based on the market yield curves.

The Company measures the value of its equity investments without readily determinable fair values at cost minus impairment, if any, plus or minus changes resulting from observable price changes in orderly transactions for the identical or similar investment. During the year ended December 31, 2021, Reneo completed its initial public offering. As a result, the fair value of the Company's investment in Reneo's common stock now has a readily determinable market value and is no longer eligible for the practical expedient for investments without readily determinable fair market values.

Assets and Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Recurring Basis

The Company evaluates its financial assets and liabilities subject to fair value measurements on a recurring basis to determine the appropriate level in which to classify them for each reporting period. This determination requires significant judgments. The following table summarizes the conclusions reached regarding fair value measurements as of December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020 (in thousands):

	Balance at December 31, 2022	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
Assets:				
Equity securities with readily determinable fair value	\$ 1,343	\$ 1,343	\$ —	\$ —
Total	<u>\$ 1,343</u>	<u>\$ 1,343</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
Liabilities:				
Warrant liability, related party ⁽¹⁾	\$ 684	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 684
Total	<u>\$ 684</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 684</u>
	Balance at December 31, 2021	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
Warrant liability, related party ⁽¹⁾	\$ 1,262	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 1,262
Total	<u>\$ 1,262</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 1,262</u>

- (1) Fair value determined using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. Expected volatility is based on the historical volatility of the Company's common stock over the most recent period. The risk-free rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of valuation.

Changes in Level 3 Instruments for the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020					
	Balance at January 1	Net Change in fair value included in earnings	Purchases / Issuance	Sales / Repurchases	Balance at December 31,
2022					
Warrant liability, related party	\$ 1,262	\$ (946)	\$ 368	\$ —	\$ 684
Total	<u>\$ 1,262</u>	<u>\$ (946)</u>	<u>\$ 368</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 684</u>
2021					
Warrant liability, related party	2,871	(1,609)	—	—	1,262
Total	<u>\$ 2,871</u>	<u>\$ (1,609)</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 1,262</u>
2020					
Warrant liability, related party	2,601	270	—	—	2,871
Total	<u>\$ 2,601</u>	<u>\$ 270</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 2,871</u>

There were no transfers into or out of level 3 instruments and/or between level 1 and level 2 instruments during the years ended December 31, 2022, 2021 and 2020. Gains and losses recognized due to the change in fair value of the warrant liability, related party are recognized as a component of other (expense) income, related party in the Consolidated Statements of Operations

The fair value of the Letter Agreement Warrants was determined using the Black-Scholes option pricing model or option pricing models based on the Company's current capitalization. Expected volatility is based on the historical volatility of the Company's common stock over the most recent period. The risk-free rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of valuation. Significant inputs utilized in the valuation of the Letter Agreement Warrants were:

	December 31, 2022		December 31, 2021	
	Range	Weighted Average	Range	Weighted Average
Expected volatility	76.94% - 85.88%	82.17%	82.68% - 142.86%	128.13%
Risk-free interest rate	4.11% - 4.43%	4.19%	0.95% - 1.26%	1.15%

The fair value of the CinRx Warrants was determined using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. Expected volatility is based on the historical volatility of the Company's common stock over the most recent period. The risk-free rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of valuation. Significant inputs utilized in the valuation of the CinRx Warrants as of December 31, 2022, were:

Expected volatility	81.4 %
Expected life of options in years	2.8
Risk-free interest rate	4.4 %
Expected dividend yield	— %

The weighted average expected volatility and risk-free interest rate was based on the relative fair values of the warrants.

Changes in the unobservable inputs noted above would impact the amount of the liability for the Letter Agreement Warrants and CinRx Warrants. Increases (decreases) in the estimates of the Company's annual volatility would increase (decrease) the liability and an increase (decrease) in the annual risk-free rate would increase (decrease) the liability.

Note 20: Subsequent Events

On February 28, 2023, the Company and G42 Investments amended the G42 Purchase Agreement and modified the G42 Promissory Note to accelerate the payment due under the note. Pursuant to the amendment, on February 28, 2023, the Company received \$12.0 million, which reflected the original amount due under the G42 Promissory Note less a 3.75% discount, in full satisfaction of the note.

THIS DEED OF NOVATION is made on 21 December 2022 **PARTIES:**

- (1) **VTV THERAPEUTICS LLC**, a Delaware limited liability company having an address at 3980 Premier Dr. Suite 310, High Point, North Carolina 27265, United States of America (the "**Continuing Party**");
- (2) **G42 HEALTHCARE RESEARCH TECHNOLOGY PROJECTS LLC**, a company registered in Abu Dhabi whose registered address is at Capital Gate Tower, Khaleej Al Arabi Street, Abu Dhabi, UAE (the "**Incoming Party**"); and
- (3) **G42 HEALTHCARE TECHNOLOGY SOLUTIONS LLC (previously known as Cogna Technology Solutions LLC)**, a company registered in Abu Dhabi, whose address is 624, Plot C18, E48 RG Building, Al Salam, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates (the "**Outgoing Party**").

each a "**Party**" and collectively the "**Parties**".

BACKGROUND

- (A) The Continuing Party and the Outgoing Party entered into that certain Collaboration and License Agreement, dated 31 May 2022, a copy of which is appended to this Deed of Novation as Annex 1 (the "**Agreement**").
- (B) The Outgoing Party wishes to transfer its rights and obligations under the Agreement to the Incoming Party.
- (C) The Parties hereby agree, subject to the terms and conditions herein, to novate the Outgoing Party's rights, obligations and liabilities under the Agreement to the Incoming Party on the terms of this Deed of Novation with effect from the date of this Deed of Novation ("**Effective Date**").

IT IS HEREBY AGREED

1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

Unless the context otherwise requires or unless defined in this Deed of Novation, all words and expressions defined or whose interpretation is provided for in the Agreement have the same meanings in this Deed of Novation.

2 NOVATION

With effect from the Effective Date:

- 2.1 The Outgoing Party transfers all its rights, obligations and liabilities under the Agreement to the

Incoming Party, which shall until the expiration or termination of the Agreement in accordance with its terms, enjoy and exercise all of the Outgoing Party's rights thereunder in full substitution of the Outgoing Party.

- 2.2 The Incoming Party undertakes to the Continuing Party and the Outgoing Party that it will

perform all the duties and discharge all the obligations and liabilities that are duties, obligations or liabilities of the Outgoing Party under the Agreement and be bound by its terms in every way as if it were the original party to it in place of the Outgoing Party. The

Incoming Party agrees that it will receive and accept responsibility for all claims and demands against the Outgoing Party arising out of or in respect of the Agreement whether arising prior to, on or subsequent to the Effective Date.

- 2.3 The Incoming Party represents and warrants that it is ready, willing and able to fully perform all obligations, duties and liabilities under the Agreement. Without limiting the foregoing, the Incoming Party hereby represents, warrants and covenants to the Continuing Party those representations, warranties and covenants set forth in Sections 11.1 and 11.3 of the Agreement as of the Effective Date.
- 2.4 The Incoming Party represents and warrants that the Outgoing Party has transferred to it, all of the assets necessary to perform the Outgoing Party's obligations under the Agreement.
- 2.5 The Continuing Party acknowledges and agrees that it hereby gives its consent to the assignment from the Outgoing Party to the Incoming Party of its rights, obligations and interests under the Agreement in accordance with the terms of this Deed of Novation.
- 2.6 The Continuing Party undertakes to the Incoming Party that it has performed and will continue to perform all its duties and will continue to discharge all its obligations and liabilities under the Agreement and that it will be bound by its terms that apply to the Incoming Party in every way as if the Incoming Party were the original party to it in place of the Outgoing Party.
- 2.7 The Outgoing Party undertakes to the Continuing Party that it has performed all its duties under the Agreement.
- 2.8 All references to the Outgoing Party in the Agreement and the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, dated as of May 31, 2022 by and among vTv Therapeutics Inc., G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd and, solely for the purposes set forth therein, G42 Holding Limited, in each case, shall be read and construed as references to the Incoming Party.

3 RELEASE OF OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITIES

- 3.1 The Continuing Party and the Outgoing Party each release and the other from further performance, discharge and observance of all obligations and liabilities under the Agreement, whether arising before, on or after the Effective Date, other than any confidentiality and nonuse obligations under that apply with respect to Confidential Information (as defined in the Agreement).
- 3.2 The Continuing Party and the Outgoing Party release and discharge each other from all claims and demands arising under or in connection with the Agreement, whether relating to the period before, on or after the Effective Date and in each case whether known or unknown to the releasing party, other than claims and demands with respect to confidentiality and non-use obligations that apply with respect to Confidential Information (as defined in the Agreement) for which the Incoming Party and Outgoing Party shall be jointly and severally liable.
- 3.3 Each of the Continuing Party and the Incoming Party may enforce the Agreement and pursue any claims and demands under or in connection with the Agreement against the other with respect to matters arising before, on or after the Effective Date as though the Incoming Party were the original party to the Agreement instead of the Outgoing Party (and,

for the avoidance of doubt, without giving effect to Sections 3.1 or 3.2). The Continuing Party and the Outgoing Party each respectively represents to the Incoming Party that at the Effective Date it has not committed any breach of the Agreement.

4 CONSTRUCTION

With effect from the Effective Date the Agreement and this Deed of Novation shall be treated as one document and save as amended by this Deed of Novation, the Agreement will continue in full force and effect.

5 GENERAL

5.1 This Deed of Novation may be executed in the form of two or more counterparts, each executed by one or more of the Parties, but taken together executed by all of the Parties, which shall together constitute one instrument.

5.2 This Deed of Novation forms the entire agreement between the Parties in relation to its subject matter and supersedes any previous verbal or written communications and representations.

6 GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION

6.1 The provisions of clause 15.11 (Governing Law, Venue and Dispute) of the Agreement shall apply to this Deed of Novation as if they were set out in full in this Deed of Novation.

[SIGNATURE page follows]

This Deed of Novation is executed as a deed and delivered on the date first stated above.

SIGNED as a DEED by)
VTV THERAPEUTICS LLC)
acting by VTV THERAPEUTICS INC., its managing)
member, acting by *Rich Nelson* in the presence of:)

/s/ Richard Nelson
Executive Vice President, Corporate Development

/s/ Vanessa McDade
..... (witness signature)

Vanessa McDade (name)

3980 Premier Drive, Suite 310 (address)

High Point, North Carolina.....

Chief Administrative Officer..... (occupation)

SIGNED as a DEED by)
G42 HEALTHCARE RESEARCH TECHNOLOGY)
PROJECTS LLC)
acting by *Peng Xiao* in the presence of:)

/s/ Peng Xiao
.....
Director

/s/ Almira Biscocho
..... (witness signature)

Almira Biscocho
..... (name)

Capital Gate
..... (address)

Abu Dhabi, UA
.....

Administration Manager
..... (occupation)

SIGNED as a DEED by)
G42 HEALTHCARE TECHNOLOGY SOLUTIONS LLC)
acting by *Peng Xiao* in the presence of:)
)

/s/ Peng Xiao
.....
Director

/s/ Almira Biscocho
..... (witness signature)

Almira Biscocho
..... (name)

Capital Gate
..... (address)

Abu Dhabi, UAE
.....

Administration Manager
..... (occupation)

THIS DEED OF VARIATION (“DEED”) is made on February 28 , 2023 (the “**Effective Date**”)

PARTIES:

- (1) **vTv THERAPEUTICS INC.**, a Delaware corporation (“**vTv**”);
- (2) **G42 INVESTMENTS AI HOLDING RSC LTD.**, a private limited company incorporated in the Abu Dhabi Global Market with registered number 000003845 and with its registered address at Office 801, floor 8, Al Khatem Tower, Abu Dhabi Global Market Square, Al Maryah Island, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates (“**G42 Investments**”); and
- (3) **GROUP 42 HOLDING LIMITED**, a private limited company incorporated in the Abu Dhabi Global Market with registered number 000001430 and with its registered address at Office 801, floor 8, Al Khatem Tower, Abu Dhabi Global Market Square, Al Maryah Island, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates (“**Group 42 Holding**”),

(each a “**Party**” and collectively the “**Parties**”).

BACKGROUND:

- (A) The Parties entered into a Common Stock Purchase Agreement dated as of May 31, 2022 (the “**CSPA**”).
- (B) G42 Investments issued a Non-Negotiable Promissory Note to vTv dated as of May 31, 2022 (the “**Closing Note**”).
- (C) G42 Investments and Group 42 Holding entered into a Letter Agreement dated as of May 31, 2022 (the “**Letter Agreement**”).
- (D) vTv and G42 Healthcare Technology Solutions LLC (previously known as Cogna Technology Solutions LLC) entered into a Collaboration and License Agreement dated as of May 31, 2022.
- (E) vTv, G42 Healthcare Research Technology Projects LLC and G42 Healthcare Technology Solutions LLC (previously known as Cogna Technology Solutions LLC) entered into a Deed of Novation dated December 21, 2022.
- (F) The Parties wish to amend, as applicable, each of the CSPA, the Closing Note and the Letter Agreement.

IT IS AGREED as follows:

1 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATION

- 1.1 The provisions of Section 1.2 of the CSPA apply to this Deed as if set out in full, with references to “this Agreement” being treated as references to “this Deed”.
- 1.2 In this Deed, any reference to a Party is to a Party to this Deed and includes a reference to that party’s successors and permitted assigns.

2 AMENDMENT TO CSPA

2.1 With effect from December 21, 2022 and in accordance with Section 6.4 of the CSPA, the Parties hereby acknowledge and agree that the following wording set out below shall be in replacement of the definition of "G42 Counterparty" under Section 1.1 of the CSPA:

"G42 Counterparty" means G42 Healthcare Technology Solutions LLC (previously known as Cogna Technology Solutions LLC) or any person to which it assigns or novates its rights and/or obligations under the Collaboration and License Agreement, as expressly permitted pursuant to the Collaboration and Licenses Agreement, from time to time.

2.2 With effect from the Effective Date and in accordance with Section 6.4 of the CSPA, the Parties hereby acknowledge and agree that:

(a) The following wording set out below shall be in replacement of the definition of "Closing Note" under Section 1.1 of the CSPA:

"Closing Note" means the promissory note of the Purchaser issued to the Company, dated as of May 31, 2022 (as amended, restated, amended and restated, supplemented and otherwise modified in accordance with the terms thereof).

(b) Exhibit A of the CSPA is hereby deleted in its entirety.

2.3 Except as set out in Clauses 2.1 and 2.2 of this Deed, all other terms of the CSPA remain the same.

3 AMENDMENT TO CLOSING NOTE

3.1 With effect from the Effective Date and in accordance with Section 5 of the Closing Note, vTv and G42 Investments hereby acknowledge and agree that:

(a) The following wording set out below shall be in replacement of the first paragraph of the Closing Note:

"Dated: May 31, 2022 (the "Issuance Date") *New York, NY*
\$12,031,250.00

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, (i) the undersigned, G42 Investments AI Holding RSC Ltd, a private limited company incorporated in the Abu Dhabi Global Market with registered number 000003845 and with its registered address at Office 801, floor 8, Al Khatem Tower, Abu Dhabi Global Market Square, Al Maryah Island, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates (the "Maker"), hereby promises to pay to vTv Therapeutics Inc., a Delaware corporation, and/or its permitted registered assigns (collectively, the "Holder"), in lawful money of the United States of America, at the address of the Holder set forth on Annex 1 hereto, or at such other place as the Holder shall from time to time have designated to the Maker in writing, the aggregate original principal amount of TWELVE MILLION THIRTY ONE THOUSAND TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY UNITED STATES DOLLARS (\$12,031,250.00), together with interest thereon, if any, in accordance with the provisions of this non-negotiable promissory note (the "Note"), which principal amount shall be due and payable as set forth in Section 2 below and (ii) Group 42 Holding Limited, a private limited company incorporated in Abu Dhabi Global Market with registered number 000001430 and having its registered office at Office 801, Floor 8, Al Khatem Tower, ADGM, Al Maryah, Abu Dhabi, United Arab Emirates (the "Sponsor"), has entered into an equity commitment letter for the benefit of the Maker, dated as of May 31, 2022 (as amended, restated, supplemented or otherwise modified, the "ECL")."

(b) The wording "the date that is one year following the Issuance Date" in Section 2(a) of the Closing Note shall be replaced by the wording "March 1, 2023".

3.2 Except as set out in Clause 3.1 of this Deed, all other terms of the Closing Note remain the same.

4 **AMENDMENT TO LETTER AGREEMENT**

4.1 With effect from the Effective Date and in accordance with Section 6 of the Letter Agreement and Section 3(a) of the Closing Note, G42 Investments and Group 42 Holding hereby acknowledge and agree, and vTv consents to such acknowledgement and agreement, that the wording "USD12,500,000" in all instances in the Letter Agreement shall be replaced by the wording "USD12,031,250". Except as set out in the foregoing sentence, all other terms of the Letter Agreement remain the same.

5 **CONSTRUCTION**

5.1 The CSPA, Closing Note and Letter Agreement (respectively) will for all purposes (except to the extent that rights have before the date of this Deed been exercised or obligations performed) be deemed as between the Parties to have been in such form as amended pursuant to Clauses 2, 3 and 4 (respectively) of this Deed on and with effect from the Effective Date.

5.2 This Deed is supplemental to (respectively) the CSPA, Closing Note and Letter Agreement and in each case is to be read and construed as one instrument together with (respectively) the CSPA, Closing Note and Letter Agreement. The CSPA, Closing Note and Letter Agreement will continue in full force and effect, as amended respectively by this Deed.

6 **GENERAL**

6.1 This Deed may be entered into in any number of counterparts, and by the Parties on separate counterparts, all of which when duly executed will together constitute one and the same instrument.

6.2 Each Party will, from time to time on being required to do so by the other Party, promptly do or procure the doing of all such acts and execute or procure the execution of all such documents as may reasonably be necessary for giving full effect to this Deed.

6.3 This Deed, and each of the CSPA, Closing Note and Letter Agreement, forms the entire agreement between the Parties in relation to its subject matter and supersedes any previous verbal or written communications and representations.

6.4 The provisions of Sections 6.2 (*Notices*), 6.4 (*Amendments and Waivers*), 6.7 (*Successors and Permitted Assigns*), Section 6.9 (*Severability*) and 6.13 (*Governing Law; Venue and Dispute Resolution*) of the CSPA shall apply to this Deed as if they were set out in full in this Deed.

This Deed has been entered into and delivered as a deed by each Party on the date specified at the top of this Deed.

[SIGNATURE page follows]

EXECUTED AND DELIVERED AS A DEED for and on behalf of

G42 INVESTMENTS AI HOLDING RSC LTD.

/s/ Peng Xiao

Name: Peng Xiao

Title: Group Chief Executive Officer

Witnessed by:

/s/ Almira Biscocho

Name: Almira Biscocho

Address: Capital Gate, Abu Dhabi, UAE

Occupation: Administration Manager

EXECUTED AND DELIVERED AS A DEED for and on behalf of

GROUP 42 HOLDING LIMITED

/s/ Peng Xiao

Name:

Title:

Witnessed by:

/s/ Almira Biscocho

Name: Almira Biscocho

Address: Capital Gate, Abu Dhabi, UAE

Occupation: Administration Manager

EXECUTED AND DELIVERED AS A DEED for and on behalf of

vTv THERAPEUTICS INC.

/s/ Richard Nelson

Name: Richard Nelson

Title: Executive Vice President – Corporate Development

Witnessed by:

/s/ Paul Sekhri

Name: Paul Sekhri

Address: 3980 Premier Dr., Suite 310, High Point, NC 27265

Occupation: Chief Executive Officer, vTv Therapeutics Inc.

vTv Therapeutics Inc.
Corporate Subsidiaries as of March 6, 2023

Subsidiary	Jurisdiction of Incorporation
vTv Therapeutics LLC	Delaware

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the following Registration Statements:

- (1) Registration Statement (Form S-8 No. 333-206335) pertaining to the vTv Therapeutics Inc. 2015 Omnibus Equity Incentive Plan,
- (2) Registration Statement (Form S-3 No. 333-232571) of vTv Therapeutics Inc.;
- (3) Registration Statement (Form S-8 No. 333-240304) of vTv Therapeutics Inc.;
- (4) Registration Statement (Form S-1 No. 333-250934) of vTv Therapeutics Inc.;
- (5) Registration Statement (Form S-3 No. 333-254445) of vTv Therapeutics Inc.; and
- (6) Registration Statement (Form S-3 No. 333-256755) of vTv Therapeutics Inc.

of our report dated March 6, 2023, with respect to the consolidated financial statements of vTv Therapeutics Inc. included in this Annual Report (Form 10-K) of vTv Therapeutics Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2022.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Raleigh, North Carolina

March 6, 2023

SECTION 302 CERTIFICATION

I, Paul J. Sekhri, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the “registrant”);
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant’s other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Securities Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant’s disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant’s internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant’s most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant’s fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant’s internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant’s other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant’s auditors and the audit committee of the registrant’s board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant’s ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant’s internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 6, 2023

By: /s/ Paul J. Sekhri

Paul J. Sekhri
Chief Executive Officer

SECTION 302 CERTIFICATION

I, Steven Tuch, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the “registrant”);
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant’s other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Securities Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant’s disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant’s internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant’s most recent fiscal quarter that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant’s internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant’s other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant’s auditors and the audit committee of the registrant’s board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant’s ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant’s internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 6, 2023

By: /s/ Steven Tuch
Steven Tuch
Chief Financial Officer

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the “Company”) on Form 10-K for the period ended December 31, 2022 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the “Report”), I, Paul J. Sekhri, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, in my capacity as an officer of the Company that, to my knowledge:

1. The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d), as applicable, of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
2. The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 6, 2023

By: /s/ Paul J. Sekhri

Paul J. Sekhri
Chief Executive Officer

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of vTv Therapeutics Inc. (the “Company”) on Form 10-K for the period ended December 31, 2022 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the “Report”), I, Steven Tuch, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, in my capacity as an officer of the Company that, to my knowledge:

1. The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
2. The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 6, 2023

By: /s/ Steven Tuch
Steven Tuch
Chief Financial Officer